This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

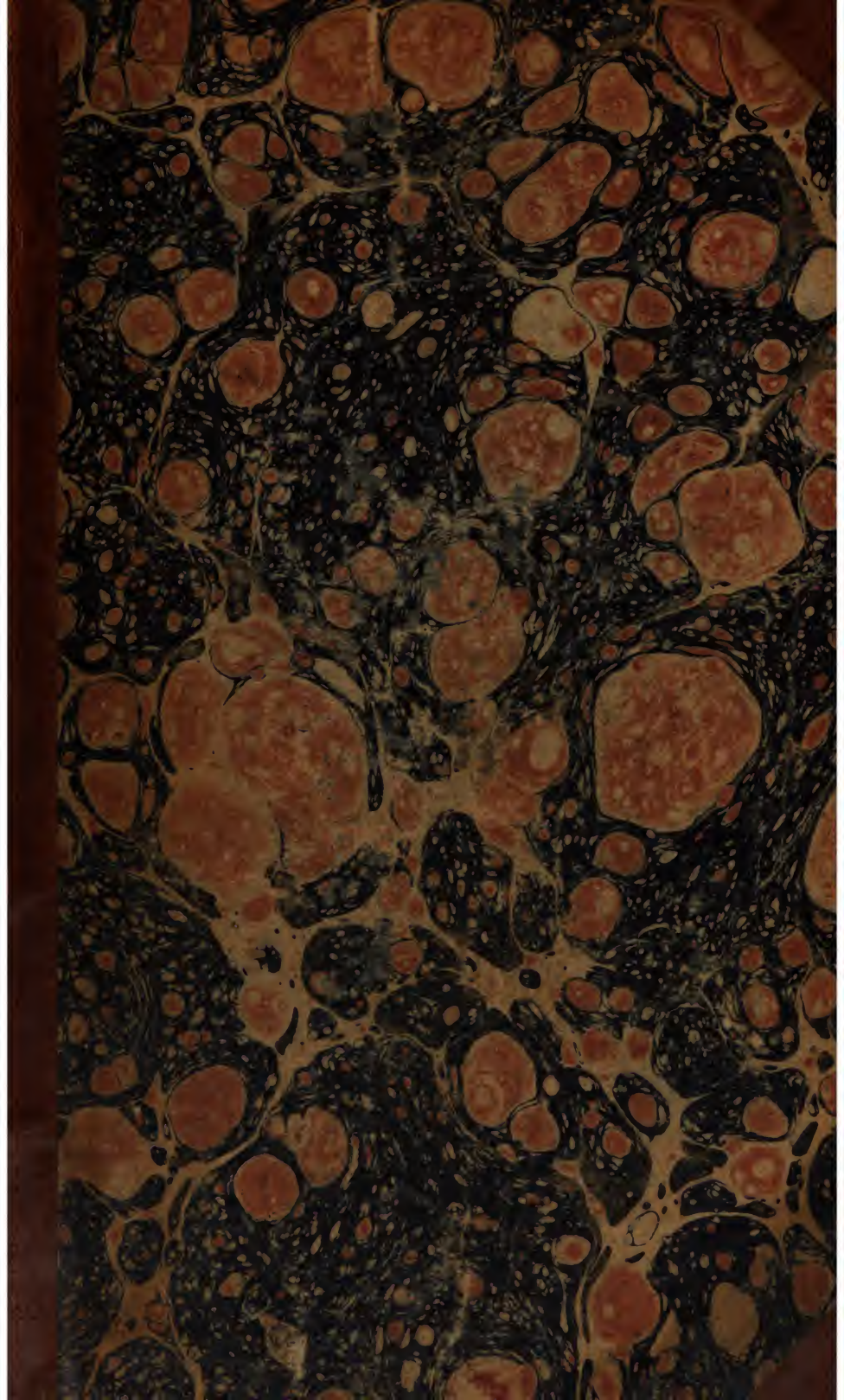
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/



357

£40

T. W. Gordon.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A

TREATISE

UPON THE

DUTIES OF LIGHT TROOPS:

TRANSLATED

FROM THE GERMAN

OF

Colonel VON EHWALD,

Of the Danish Slefwick Yager Corps, and Knight of the Hessian Order Pour le Merite.

LONDON:

Printed by C. Roworth, Bell Yard, Fleet Street,

FOR T. EGERTON, AT THE MILITARY LIBRARY, NEAR WHITEHALL.

1803.

Digitized by Google

U102
E313

Digitized by Google

TO

FIELD MARSHAL

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS

THE DUKE OF YORK,

COMMANDER IN CHIEF, &c. &c.

THIS TRANSLATION

IS

MOST HUMBLY DEDICATED,

WITH

HIS ROYAL PERMISSION,

BY HIS MOST OBEDIENT

AND MOST DEVOTED SERVANT,

A. MAIMBURG,

Late Lieut. of the 8th (or King's) Regt. of Infantry.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

THE Work of Colonel EHWALD upon Light Troops is well known, and highly conſidered in the military country of Germany. The author ſerved with diſtinction in the revolutionary war of America, in the Heſſian troops in Britiſh pay; and has ſince commanded a light corps in the ſervice of His Daniſh Majeſty.

The excellent precepts which he lays down for the conduct of ſuch troops, in the various circumſtances of the *petite guerre*, are exemplified from the celebrated occurrences of the ſeven years war, the American, and other campaigns.

The application of uſeful leſſons to events which have actually happened, and are extremely intereſting, holds them up in a clear point of view to the underſtanding, and fixes them deep in the memory.

The

Digitized by Google

The tranſlator therefore flatters himſelf that the following Treatiſe cannot fail to prove uſeful to the Britiſh army.

It has been thought neceſſary to omit the part of this work which treated of manœuvres, as they were all old and now no more practiſed in Germany; it would only have increaſed the bulk and price of the volume, and have been likely to miſlead young officers: the movements for light infantry, which the author recommends, are all to be found in the Rules and Regulations; and what is peculiar to riflemen, is more in detail in Colonel Rothemburg's work.

The charts of the ſeven years war, eſpecially that by Möller, of the Wetterau, are recommended by the author to elucidate the examples which he produces for inſtruction.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

OF THE FORMATION OF A LIGHT CORPS.

Sect. Page.

1. *Advantages of inſtructing troops of the line to perform the duties of light troops* 1
2. *Qualifications of officers; of recruiting and diſcipline — — —* 6
3. *Of the ſtrength of a light corps —* 15
4. *Of the clothing and arms of a light corps* 21
5. *Of the baggage of a light corps —* 25

CHAP. II.

1. *Of the manual exerciſe for light infantry and cavalry — — —* 31
2. *Of flanking or acting in open order, or en Tirailleur — — —* 37
3. *Of retreating — — —* 39
4. *Of cavalry — — —* 41

CHAP. III.

OF THE DUTY OF AN OFFICER OF LIGHT INFANTRY.

1. *How an officer of light infantry ought to act upon a march — —* 46
2. *Of the duty of an officer of light infantry on piquet or out-poſts —* 55

3. *Of*

Digitized by Google

Sect. Page.

3. *Of fortifying and defending caſtles, churches, farms, and houſes* — 58
4. *Of the excurſions of ſmall parties of light infantry* — — — 66
5. *Of petards* — — — 75

CHAP. IV.

OF THE DUTY OF AN OFFICER OF LIGHT CAVALRY.

1. *Of grand guards* — — 82
2. *Of the advance-guard* — — 91
3. *Of lateral patroles* — — 95
4. *How an officer of cavalry ought to act on a patrole* — — — 96
5. *Of the duty of an officer of light cavalry on a rear-guard* — — — 102

CHAP. V.

OF THE DUTY OF A LIGHT CORPS.

1. *Of the duty of a light corps when marching againſt the enemy* — — 106
2. *Of the choice of a poſt in the field* 140
3. *Of incloſed poſts* — — 166
4. *Of reconnoitring* — — — 183
5. *Of ſurpriſals* — — — 190
6. *Of the duty of a partiſan on the retreat of the enemy* — — — 220
7. *Of ambuſcades* — — 233
8. *Of retreats* — — — 246

Digitized by Google

TREATISE

UPON THE

DUTIES OF LIGHT TROOPS.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE FORMATION OF A LIGHT CORPS.

SECTION I.

In order to obviate the Inconveniences which muſt ariſe from a Want of Light Troops, it would be advantageous for an Army that the Troops of the Line ſhould be inſtructed to perform the Duties of Light Troops.

IN a military ſyſtem where it is wiſhed that light troops ſhould be made leſs neceſſary, the only way would be to inſtruct the troops of the line to perform thoſe particular duties. Armies would then be better ſecured againſt attacks from the enemy, and the moſt arduous enter-

Digitized by Google

priſes would ſeldomer fail, than when entruſted to light corps raiſed generally in a hurry, at the beginning of a war, and compoſed frequently of the dregs of the human race, upon whom no dependence can be placed on account of the frequent deſertions which never fail to happen among them after unſucceſsful events, or towards the end of a campaign. Why ſhould not the troops of the line be taught and practiſe the ſame duties, being (as they are) made up of the ſame ſort of men, and cloathed and armed alike? the difference of the name alone cannot conſtitute a different kind of troops.

This duty ought not to be performed by detachments, but by whole regiments, battalions, or ſquadrons, which ſhould be relieved after two or three months of that harraſſing duty; the ſoldier of the line would thereby become more hardy, and what ſeldom happens to him, except in a battle or engagement, he would often ſee the enemy, and accuſtom himſelf to that ſight. Thus, an army would be formed, calculated to cope with any nation, capable of fighting after any manner, and in a pitched battle it would not be deprived of a conſiderable proportion of its numbers. The officer, who would find in the performance of this duty daily opportunities to diſtinguiſh himſelf and acquire reputation, would eagerly apply to the ſtudy of the

Digitized by Google

the *petite guerre.* A number of good officers would thus be reared, and the General would no more be at a loſs (as it is but too often the caſe at preſent) where to find in critical circumſtances a field officer equal to a difficult undertaking.

A light company and a light troop might be added to the regiments of infantry and cavalry; the only difference in the arms would be in a rifle with a long bayonet, for the light companies, and the light troops would be mounted upon light horſes and wear ſabres inſtead of broad ſwords; theſe being lighter, and better calculated for cutting.

The force of theſe companies can be augmented in time of war, according to circumſtances, and formed into battalions or ſquadrons under the command of field officers qualified for that kind of warfare both by ſtudy and experience.

In time of peace, at the ſeaſon appointed for exerciſe, theſe companies are every year to be formed into battalions, as is the caſe with the grenadier companies in Germany; are to be commanded by capable field officers, and uniformly inſtructed; the inſpection of the whole muſt be intruſted to one of theſe field officers. During the ſeaſon of exerciſe an example of all the dif-

Digitized by Google

ferent occurrences which can happen in war muſt be practiſed for the inſtruction of officers and non-commiſſioned officers; for inſtance, how an advance, or rear guard, or a patrole is to be conducted; how to act on a reconnoitring party; how to make a report of what they have been ordered to perform; in what manner to take poſt with a detachment of infantry or cavalry; how to fortify a poſt in a ſhort time, and how to cover it by videttes and centinels, how theſe muſt be placed, and when the detachment is too weak to ſupply as many ſentries as the ground requires, in what manner it can be ſecured againſt ſurpriſe by patroles. Officers and non-commiſſioned officers muſt receive clear inſtructions concerning attacks by ſurpriſe and ambuſcades, in what manner to attack, or carry a poſt by a *coup de main*, how to defend or attack a village, how to make loop-holes in a wall, how to fix a petard to a gate (every officer ought to know how it is to be managed); they muſt be taught how to find their way in an unknown country, and what is the beſt manner of becoming acquainted with the nature of a country; how to judge with accuracy of the diſtance and number of troops, how to take every advantage againſt the enemy, and to practiſe all the ſtratagems of war.

How advantageous it would be for an army to

Digitized by Google

to have a body of light troops formed in this manner! 200 of them, under an able commander would perform what in general requires a thouſand; however inconſiderable their number, ſuch troops would no doubt look without fear upon a ſuperior number of raw and undiſciplined ſoldiers, for ſuperiority over an enemy in the field is acquired rather by the quality than the number of men. The Swedes under Charles XII. and the Pruſſians in the ſeven years war have proved the truth of this aſſertion.

The greateſt attention muſt be paid to complete theſe light companies at the end of a campaign, not with deſerters or raw recruits, but by drafts from the regiments of hardy and well made young lads, not leſs than 5 feet 4 inches high, as it is practiſed in the Britiſh light companies, and in France in the chaſſeur companies.

Regiments of huſſars or light dragoons have indeed been raiſed in every country, in order to have a permanent light cavalry; and battalions of light infantry and riflemen have lately been placed upon the regular eſtabliſhment, for the ſake of having, at the beginning of a war, a number of light troops ready formed; but theſe do not anſwer the purpoſe, ſince they do not conſiſt entirely of truſty men, upon whoſe faith the moſt implicit confidence can be placed; beſides, the number of ſuch light troops is not

Digitized by Google

proportionate to the force of our preſent large armies in time of war; therefore, new corps of that deſcription muſt be raiſed at the beginning of a war.

I ſhall now proceed to deliver my ideas upon the compoſition which will render a light corps ſerviceable in war, and upon the kind of inſtruction neceſſary for it; I ſhall alſo point out how its commander and officers are to act in every circumſtance.

SECTION II.

Qualifications of Officers; of Recruiting, and Diſcipline.

IN levying ſuch corps the commander ought never to be ſuffered to ſell his companies or other commiſſions, or to diſpoſe of them for a certain number of recruits; for if he be of a covetous diſpoſition, he will certainly ſacrifice the good of the ſervice to his private intereſt.

The abſolute neceſſity of light troops is univerſally acknowledged; the ſafety of an army reſts upon them; they are neceſſary to its very exiſtence. Experience proves that an army provided with a ſufficient body of theſe troops under the command of able and enterpriſing leaders,

Digitized by Google

leaders, enjoys perfect ſecurity in its camp, while another deficient in that reſpect is conſtantly alarmed and teazed on every ſide, beſieged in its own camp, and when on a march is perpetually harraſſed by the enemy. However convinced of all this, as every body is, yet no attention is paid to the choice of officers for theſe corps; profligate and abandoned men are frequently appointed to them, who, by their vices, ignorance, and indolence, muſt at laſt ruin the reputation of the corps, while, in fact, they ought to be extremely nice about the moral character of officers, and careful to admit none who are addicted to drinking, gambling, or women; and indeed how could a man, whoſe ſpirits are exhauſted by ſuch vicious habits, ſupport the fatigues of war, and be always vigilant and alert.

Indeed military experience alone can give an idea of all the qualifications neceſſary to render an officer fit to ſerve in the light troops. He is always in preſence of the enemy; the moſt imminent danger muſt never make the leaſt impreſſion upon him; he muſt always remain cool and capable of profiting by every circumſtance or fault which the enemy may commit; what the general does upon a large ſcale, he muſt do upon a ſmall one; how could he indeed, ſeparated from the army and left to himſelf, receive di-

Digitized by Google

rections from the general upon his conduct, and how could the general give him ſuch directions as would apply to every occurrence, when circumſtances may change every moment? Should he be thus circumſcribed, how often would he loſe the opportunity of executing ſome lucky *coup de main*, or perhaps fall into faults which might be attended with the moſt ſerious conſequences for the army? How many inſtances could be produced, where the ignorance or neglect of the commander of an out-poſt, or reconnoitring party, has been attended with the ruin of armies and the loſs of whole provinces? nay, I will maintain that the careleſsneſs and unſkilfulneſs of an officer of *yägers* (who, fortunately for himſelf, loſt his life eight days after), has been the cauſe of the irreparable loſs of fourteen provinces; had this officer ſent reconnoitring parties up the banks of the Delaware, as he ought to have done, the approach of General Waſhington muſt have been diſcovered, and the attack of Trainton would have proved fatal to the Americans.

I flatter myſelf to have clearly proved the neceſſity of appointing able officers to the light troops; in ſhort, theſe corps require the cleaneſt, beſt behaved, truſtieſt, moſt active, capable and brave officers, who joyfully embrace this kind of warfare, deſpiſing danger, renouncing eaſe and

Digitized by Google

and comfort, and ſubmitting with pleaſure to the fatigues and hardſhips of war.

The commander of ſuch a corps can, therefore, never be too ſtrict; he muſt from the firſt day of its formation communicate his intentions to the officers, that he will be happy to find opportunities of ſerving them, but that in the mean time he requeſts their implicit obedience to his orders, in return for which he will place the greateſt confidence in them; he muſt repreſent to them how neceſſary it is that the efforts of every one ſhould be applied to the common advantage; he muſt, from the firſt moment, take notice of the moſt trifling irregularity; he will give ſtrict orders to the officers that they are never to be abſent from their companies without his leave, and he will never permit any to be abſent a minute from exerciſe. He will give them to underſtand that they are henceforth to conſider the corps as their home, and to look upon their duties as their only paſtime and amuſement. He is never to ſuffer any rioting or gambling among them, for their future conduct will depend much upon the leſſons which they receive at firſt. Such a commander muſt alſo act as liberally with his officers as his circumſtances will admit; he muſt invite them often to his table, to have opportunities to become acquainted with their diſpoſition, and to gain their con-

Digitized by Google

fidence; but he ought to behave with decorum, and avoid that familiarity which too much wine occaſions, and which always ends in contempt. He muſt try to correct, or at leaſt conceal his faults, ſo as not to loſe the reſpect which is due to him. Is he obliged to puniſh an officer? he muſt be very cautious not to offend him by harſh language, for nothing can be more diſtreſſing to a man of honour than to be hurt in his feelings by one from whom he cannot demand ſatisfaction; he will in this caſe aſſure the officer whom he is obliged to puniſh, that he is very ſorry to be under that neceſſity, and hopes it will be the firſt and laſt time; he muſt always ſhow the greateſt impartiality in his puniſhments, as a contrary conduct is ſure to create hatred; all his actions muſt in fact be calculated to obtain the love of his officers, and make them conſider themſelves as happy to be under his command.

It will alſo be neceſſary at the formation of ſuch a corps to get from the line a proportion of truſty non-commiſſioned officers and men, in order to forward the inſtruction of the recruits; but theſe draughts ought to conſiſt of faithful, active, and brave young men, and none of thoſe old, worn out, ill-behaved and ill-natured fellows, as is in general the caſe; becauſe the regiments of the line ſeize ſuch opportunities to get rid of their

Digitized by Google

their worſt men. At the formation of ſuch a corps the commander ought alſo to pay ſome attention to the kind of recruits, and not admit improper ſubjects in order to be completed a little ſooner.

If the circumſtances admit of being nice in the choice of men, it will be proper to pay attention to the profeſſion of the recruits that offer, as well as to their age and ſize; no printers, bookbinders, taylors, ſhoemakers, or weavers, ſhould be enliſted, as from their buſineſs they contract habits of effeminacy, and are unable to ſupport the fatigues of war; none ſhould be received who are under 5 feet 4 inches high, or above 30 years of age; between 16 and 30 man is in the bloom of life, and fit to endure all the hardſhips of war, and when it comes to cloſe quarters a well-proportioned man from 5 feet 7 to 10 inches is preferable to one of a leſs ſize, becauſe he can reach farther with his weapons. Old ſoldiers are not to be ſought after: I was perſuaded of the contrary when I raiſed in the Heſſian ſervice one of the two firſt rifle companies which were to ſerve in America; but how ſoon was I made ſenſible of my miſtake in the firſt campaign; the young men ſtood perfectly the climate and every hardſhip, while the old ſoldiers, whoſe conſtitution had already been impaired by former campaigns, were ſoon laid up, and

Digitized by Google

and ſent to the hoſpital, and I remarked alſo that young men were more to be depended upon either in attack or defence; for being engaged with my company for the firſt time the day after our landing in the province of New York, I had the misfortune while reconnoitring to be completely ſurrounded by a far ſuperior number of riflemen; my old ſoldiers were the firſt who perceived our ſituation, and I was forſaken by many of them, but the young lads ſtood by me in the innocence of their hearts, and to them I owed the preſervation of myſelf and my party excepting two who were taken priſoners.

The ſevereſt diſcipline muſt be eſtabliſhed in ſuch a corps from the firſt moment; for a commanding officer can never be too ſtrict with men collected from all corners of the world; no fault, however trifling, ought to be overlooked.

When men are accuſtomed to ſtrict diſcipline, puniſhment becomes leſs neceſſary. Rewards and puniſhments in ſuch corps muſt be in the extreme; thoſe who behave well or diſtinguiſh themſelves muſt be publicly praiſed and encouraged by rewards and promotion, the diſobedient muſt be puniſhed in the moſt exemplary manner; eſpecially ſuch as are not watchful on duty, drunkards, gamblers, and plunderers, who rob and uſe ill the inhabitants of the country.

The beſt way with ſuch hardened ſinners would be,

Digitized by Google

be, after conviction of their crimes, to ſtrip them naked to the ſhirt, ſhave their heads, and turn them out in the moſt ſhameful manner before the front of the whole corps; puniſhments of this ſort make a deeper impreſſion than the ſevereſt corporal ones; I was only once obliged to uſe it, before our departure for America, and the effect was ſuch that for ſome time after, I had no puniſhment at all to inflict.

It is an error to believe that you will gain the love of the ſoldiers by ſhewing a culpable indulgence to them at the expence of the poor peaſants, who have already too much to ſuffer from war; by no means! The ſoldier will try every thing, if a crime be once overlooked, he will truſt to your weakneſs, and exceſſes of every kind will grow ſo frequent that the honor of the corps and the corps itſelf muſt be ruined; the enraged inhabitants of the country, in order to revenge their ſufferings, will ſeize every opportunity to betray you to the enemy, and this alone may be attended with the moſt ſerious conſequences, while by diſcipline and good behaviour friends may be made even in an enemy's country.

Before I conclude this ſection, I ſhall propoſe a method which will perhaps be found the beſt, to put a ſtop to deſertion, which is in general ſo frequent with ſuch corps, and is not conſidered as ſeriouſly as it ought to be. A deſerter is pardoned

Digitized by Google

doned after going over to the enemy two or three times with his arms and accoutrements, of which he has robbed his ſovereign or his captain, and he is received with pleaſure if he bring with him other arms from the enemy; nay, I have known an inſtance where a ſentry deſerting from his poſt was pardoned becauſe he came back, when if the enemy had profited by the circumſtance it would have been the ruin of the corps, and perhaps of the whole army.

With men who have enliſted of their own accord, commanding officers have of courſe an undoubted right to puniſh deſertion ſeverely, which may prove of the moſt dangerous conſequence at out-poſts. In my opinion this practice (ſo frequent with light troops that nothing is thought of it) could be eaſily ſtopped by marking a gallows upon the foreheads of ſuch as are caught, with a red hot iron, and then ſending them back to the enemy; the fear of infamy will more effectually prevent crimes than that of death; this puniſhment may alſo be uſed againſt thoſe who are guilty of barbarity towards the country people, of which I could relate ſuch ſhocking inſtances, that it would make every friend of humanity ſhudder, and would diſgrace human nature.

Notwithſtanding the ſeverity of diſcipline, you ſhould convince the ſoldiers that you love them; the

Digitized by Google

the greateſt care muſt be taken to procure for them punctually what they have a right to expect, and that they never ſuffer from the ſelfiſhneſs of their captain (which muſt be ſeverely puniſhed), they muſt feel that they are ſuffered to enjoy all the good which can be allowed them, and the commanding officer muſt ſhow himſelf perfectly diſintereſted in all his tranſactions; by ſuch conduct he will find himſelf able to execute any thing with his men, and if by his good behaviour, addreſs, and courage he have once gained the confidence of his inferiors, he may depend upon them in all ſituations; but he muſt not permit grumbling either among officers or ſoldiers, however harraſſing the duty may be.

SECTION III.

Of the Strength of a Light Corps.

IN order to render ſuch a corps uſeful, it muſt be compoſed of infantry and cavalry, as the mutual ſupport of theſe two arms greatly increaſes their ſtrength.

Such a corps ought not to be under 1200 or at leaſt 1000 ſtrong, but it would be a fault, on the

Digitized by Google

the other ſide, to make it much ſtronger, for inſtance to augment it to 2 or 3 thouſand; becauſe officers, capable of leading ſuch corps, as they ought to be, are rare in any army; but ſhould it be leſs numerous than we have propoſed, it would be impoſſible for its commander to perform important and brilliant actions, becauſe ſuch a corps, being daily engaged with the enemy, muſt of courſe get weaker every day, and ſhould it by any unfortunate accident ſuffer a conſiderable loſs, it would at once be made incapable of ſerving actively for the remainder of the campaign. I have ſeen during the American war that ſeveral Britiſh light corps of 6 or 700 men, were, at the end of a fatiguing campaign, reduced to leſs than half their number actually under arms; and my own experience has ſhown me, that a detachment of which I had the command in the campaign in Virginia, conſiſting of 125 riflemen, the two flank companies of an Engliſh regiment of 50 men each and 30 horſe, was, at the end of the campaign, reduced to 60 men fit for ſervice; and out of the 125 Heſſian and Anſpach riflemen I could muſter no more than 20 under arms on the day that York town capitulated. This will prove the impropriety of ſending weak corps or detachments to a diſtance from the army, where they cannot be relieved.

The

Digitized by Google

The half or at leaſt a third muſt be cavalry; ſo that ſomething may be undertaken with it alone, if that be found neceſſary. It would alſo be advantageous if the infantry of a light corps were mounted; ſmall and ſtrong horſes of a low price might be bought for them. Their appearance and uſe would then be the ſame as that of dragoons at their firſt eſtabliſhment, when it was intended to remove expeditiouſly the flower of the infantry from one place to another.

What is in fact the uſe of a light corps but to move rapidly, to find out the enemy and teazing him to night in one place, get the diſtance of ten or twelve leagues from him by next morning? Thus cavalry would never be obliged to act without its infantry in a *coup de main*, which requires expedition, and ſuch a corps would be able to undertake any thing, and eſpecially in an uneven and woody country could conſtantly and unexpectedly harraſs the enemy in every direction. If threatened by a ſuperior force, ſuch a corps could eſcape by the rapidity of its motions, and in order to ſave the cavalry, the infantry would never be ſacrificed to the enemy; it could croſs any river, and might attempt to carry even fortified towns of the ſecond order.

I ſhall introduce here a ſketch of the formation of ſuch a corps.

Digitized by Google

Two companies of foot riflemen, each compoſed of

1 Captain,
1 Firſt Lieutenant,
2 Second Lieutenants,
2 Bugle horns,
20 Non-commiſſioned officers; called overjagers, the moſt capable among them will have charge of the Company's Roſter, another will be *Fourier**, and a third Captain of Arms,
200 Privates.

Thus 10 men will form a ſquad, the force of the company will be 226, and both companies 452 ſtrong. Such a company can perform a great deal of actual ſervice before it grows ſo weak as to be incapable of acting with efficacy. The eldeſt captain of the two ought to be of known capacity and courage.

Two companies of light infantry

1 Captain,
1 Firſt Lieutenant,
2 Second Lieutenants,
1 Serjeant,
1 Captain of Arms,
16 Corporals,
2 Bugle horns, (whom I would give alſo

* The employment of Fourier anſwers to that of pay ſerjeant.

to

Digitized by Google

to theſe light companies, in order to accuſtom the whole corps to obey the ſounds, as well as the voice, and becauſe this inſtrument is preferable to any other in the field, as it may be diſtinctly heard at the diſtance of three miles) and

200 Privates.

The whole of the light infantry would thus be 304.

Two ſquadrons of light horſe.

1 Captain,
1 Firſt Lieutenant,
3 Second Lieutenants,
3 Trumpeters,
3 Serjeants,
1 Quarter Maſter,
16 Corporals,
200 Privates.

The two ſquadrons 456 effective.

The commander and two field officers are enough for ſuch a corps, but one of the latter ought to have previouſly ſerved in the cavalry in order to take the command of the two ſquadrons. For although a good officer, who has ſufficiently ſtudied his profeſſion, will certainly be able to lead in a proper manner both infantry and cavalry; yet the interior duties cannot be perfectly known in their *detail* but by an officer who has ſerved in both. The officers of the two ſquadrons ought to have

Digitized by Google

ſerved in the cavalry, and the officers of the four companies in the infantry, that the men may be properly trained, and the interior duty punctually attended to.

By adding to the corps an auditeur,* a clergyman, a quarter maſter, a ſurgeon and 6 mates, a waggon maſter, a gun-ſmith, a farrier, who muſt underſtand the veterinary art, a bugle horn major, a provoſt, and ſix good carpenters, who will prove very uſeful in the fortifying of a poſt, the whole corps will muſter 1381.

It will be very important to procure proper ſurgeon's mates; and the ſurgeon himſelf muſt be not only a man of profeſſional reſpectability, but humane and zealous; as through the want of ſuch qualifications many a good ſoldier who happens to be wounded may loſe his limbs or life. And it is to be wiſhed that the ſovereign would at the end of a war allow to the regimental ſurgeons, and phyſicians of the military hoſpitals, a certain ſum for every man either ſeverely wounded or dangerouſly ill, whoſe limbs, health, or life have been preſerved by their ſkill and attention; it would be an encouragement to them, and probably ſave many a poor ſoldier. The Sovereign would be amply recompenſed for

* The charge of an auditeur anſwers to that of judge advocate.

additional

this additional expence by the preſervation of his ſubjects and of his brave ſoldiers.

With regard to the pay of theſe corps, I have to obſerve, that the riflemen and the light infantry, as well as the light horſe, ought to receive the ſame; they live and act together, and a difference of pay in the ſame corps, creates only diſcontent.

SECTION IV.

Of the Clothing and Arms of a Light Corps.

GREEN is undoubtedly the beſt and moſt convenient colour for light troops, as it is leſs ſeen at a diſtance, and not at all in woods. If I had the choice of the clothing and equipment of ſuch a corps, I would give them a green jacket with black capes and cuffs, it ſhould be made to button the whole length of the body; a green waiſtcoat with ſleeves, calculated to do duty in during the ſummer.—This dreſs, with a little repair, might ſerve for two years, as the ſoldier would not wear his coat more than ſixteen months during that period.

Inſtead of breeches I would make uſe of the Engliſh trowſers, which anſwer at once the pur-

Digitized by Google

poſe of breeches and gaiters; only I would have them made ſufficiently wide about the calf of the leg and the knee to allow the man to march with eaſe; this would ſave the expence of ſtockings; and thus the ſoldier will have leſs to carry in his knapſack, beſides the ſaving of garters and knee buckles, two very inconvenient articles, eſpecially when the men muſt remain dreſſed day and night. Trowſers of grey linen ought to be worn in ſummer, and grey cloth in winter.

For head dreſs I would recommend a plain well cocked hat with a cockade. Many give the preference to a round hat, but I am not of that opinion; becauſe round hats are more liable to be blown off by the wind, and give a robber-like appearance to the ſoldier: beſides in rainy weather the men pull them ſo low over their ears, that they become very improper for ſentries. I remember upon this ſubject, that in the firſt campaign, in the province of Jerſey during the American war, as I was on a patrole, with the then Captain Von Wraeden, we met, in very rainy and windy weather, with a party of Americans; their advanced guard had their faces ſo concealed under their round hats, that they never perceived our advanced guard before they were ſeized by them and made priſoners. Since that time I have been thoroughly convinced that the ſoldier ought to preſerve his

ſight

Digitized by Google

ſight free; and if it rain very hard, he can let down the back flap of his hat, and thus keep his head and neck dry.

As light troops are not allowed to have tents, and are conſtantly expoſed to the weather, it is proper to give a great coat or blanket to every man in the corps to cover himſelf with during the night; in rainy or very cold weather he can uſe the blanket as a great coat; on a march or on ſentry it will alſo be of ſervice to preſerve his firelock from the wet.

A rifleman is armed with a rifle, a ſhort cutlaſs ſupported by a black or brown belt worn acroſs the ſhoulders; and a pouch with a belt of the ſame colour as the firſt.

The light infantry companies muſt be provided with good muſquets, triangular bayonets, and a pouch as the riflemen. I would not give them ſide arms, as ſuperfluous for a man who muſt fight with his bayonet; they are beſides inconvenient for marching, augment the expence, and are dangerous in quarrels.

Both ſquadrons of cavalry muſt be mounted and armed as light as huſſars, with the only difference of a light muſquet and a long bayonet inſtead of a carbine, ſo that they may be able to fight on foot if neceſſary.

There ought to be in each ſquadron twenty-five good ſhots, armed with rifles inſtead of muſ-

Digitized by Google

quets, they will prove very uſeful on advance and rear guards, or ſkirmiſhes; they can alſo be uſed to great advantage when a poſt or paſſage muſt be expeditiouſly carried by cavalry, and requires to be obſtinately defended.

Every ſquad, of ten men and a corporal in the cavalry, as well as the infantry, ought to carry conſtantly with them 3 ſhovels, 2 pickaxes, an axe, and 2 hatchets; in order to be always able to fortify a poſt when neceſſary.

Many ſenſible men are of opinion, that ſuch corps ought to have ſome light field pieces; but I will maintain, that as the ſucceſs of the operations of theſe troops depends upon the rapidity of their movements, artillery would be more cumberſome than uſeful. I would rather recommend a few petards to be carried, which are better adapted to knock down gates or old walls than two pounders, and can be eaſily tranſported upon bât horſes, in the moſt rugged country. I ſhall hereafter treat fully of this inſtrument, and acquaint young officers with its uſe and management.

SEC-

Digitized by Google

SECTION V.

Of the Baggage of a Light Corps.

ALTHOUGH light corps ought to have leſs baggage than others, it will be found that the contrary practice has prevailed among them; for by frequent captures from the enemy, the officers can procure horſes and other articles much eaſier and cheaper than thoſe of other corps, and the quantity of ſuperfluous horſes and ſervants, which they keep, will frequently oblige them to quit a poſt for want of proviſions and forage.

For my part I cannot conceive how generals permit the officers of their armies to have ſuch a monſtrous number of ſervants and horſes. If this abuſe were corrected, how much longer would an army be able to keep the field! How often has a corps or an army been obliged to quit the beſt poſition, through want of forage! by taking from theſe gentlemen the opportunity of diverting themſelves with riding, they would be obliged to look to their corps or regiment for amuſement; it would alſo diminiſh the inconvenience reſulting from the extravagant quantity of baggage, which takes away ſo many men from their duty; for as officers cannot maintain

ſo

Digitized by Google

ſo many ſervants as the quantity of their baggage requires, they muſt employ ſoldiers for this purpoſe; a field officer will ſometimes take three or four, a captain two at leaſt, and the ſubaltern one, to attend upon their baggage. Let us reckon at the rate of ſix or eight men from each company, and we ſhall ſee that the general will thereby have ſeveral thouſand men leſs on the day of battle; it is alſo to be remarked that the men employed by the officers are in general the beſt and truſtieſt; and to have 2000 of the beſt ſoldiers more or leſs on the day of action is certainly no trifling matter.

Another abuſe will alſo reſult from the firſt, namely, that a captain will frequently promote to the rank of non-commiſſioned officers thoſe men who have ſerved him faithfully; I have even ſeen people of that deſcription made officers to the great injury of the ſervice; for as ſuch men have frequently, during whole years, had nothing to do but to attend upon the captain, they know nothing about duty, and thus the regiment or corps is filled with the worſt non-commiſſioned officers, who are not reſpected by the ſoldier: and the beſt men ſeeing by ſuch injuſtice that good conduct is no recommendation, become diſcontented and diſheartened. Why ſhould not an officer, who is well fed, whoſe dreſs is light, and who carries nothing about him

Digitized by Google

him but his ſword, have as much ſtrength as the common ſoldier and be as able as he to perform a march upon his feet? conſider alſo, that thoſe among the officers who are fond of ſhooting, will, for whole days together, remain on their legs, and endure, without complaining, the hardſhips inſeparable from that diverſion, but to march with the regiment, that they cannot. And why? becauſe it is not cuſtomary. In the wars in America who gives horſes to the Engliſh and French officers? From the colonel downwards every one muſt perform his duty on foot. I have heard Sir William Howe ſay frequently, that during the ſeven years war while he commanded, as a colonel, the Britiſh light infantry in America, he had always carried himſelf his own blanket and canteen, and marched on foot. My own experience has taught me, during the American war, that an officer can live without horſes, and all this depends upon prejudice or cuſtom; it was thought very hard at firſt and even diſgraceful for an officer; I was myſelf of that opinion, but as it could not be otherwiſe, we were forced to ſubmit, and by degrees attached our pride to marching on foot, as well as the common ſoldier. During the whole American war, I recollect only one officer who actually died of extreme fatigue on a march expoſed to the burning ſun; while I have ſeen

a great

Digitized by Google

a great number of men loſe their lives in that manner: from which it may be eaſily concluded, that the officer who fares better and has not overſtrained his ſtrength in his youth is able to ſupport more hardſhips than the common ſoldier. As this would be advantageous to the Sovereign, he could give the officers their rations in money, that they might not ſuffer by this regulation, for their pay in every country is ſo low as not to admit of reduction.

I will point out here the quantity of baggage which a light corps ought to have, and which would be ſufficient for any part of the globe.

Commanding officer, 2 ſaddle and 2 ſervants' horſes, 2 bât horſes, a ſervant, a cook, a groom, and a bât man.

The field officer of the cavalry,—2 ſaddle horſes, 1 for a ſervant, 2 bât horſes, a ſervant, a groom and bât man.

The captain of a troop,—2 ſaddle horſes, a ſervant's and a bât horſe, a ſervant, a groom, and bât man.

For a Lieutenant,—2 ſaddle horſes.

The four officers of each ſquadron,--2 mounted valets, and 2 bât horſes and bât men.

The field officer of the infantry,—2 ſaddle horſes, 1 for a ſervant, and 2 bât horſes, a valet, a ſervant, and a bât man.

The

Digitized by Google

The captain of a company,—a ſaddle horſe, a bât horſe, a ſervant, and bât man.

The firſt lieutenant is allowed the ſame; and the two ſub-lieutenants,—2 ſaddle horſes, a bât horſe, and 2 valets.

The auditeur and clergyman,---2 ſaddle horſes, and a bât horſe.

The ſurgeon and quarter maſter have each, a ſaddle and a bât horſe, and a ſervant and valet; 2 bât horſes more are allowed for medicine cheſts. The waggon maſter, a ſaddle horſe; and the farrier, a cart with one horſe, ſupplied by the ſovereign.

Beſide theſe horſes, the ſovereign may allow to each company a bât horſe and bât man, to afford an opportunity to the officers commanding companies of carrying a few ſpare arms and ſhoes or boots; beſides a cart with two horſes for ready made cartridges. To prevent any abuſe, the charge of this cart and company bât horſes muſt be given to the waggon maſter. As light troops have no tents, of courſe officers muſt not be allowed to have any tent or field bed; a bear or deer ſkin, or a blanket beſides the great coat muſt ſuffice.

No officer in the Heſſian and Anſpach yagers, during the whole of the American war, ever carried with him any tent, or bed, table or chair; and once uſed to it we did not diſlike this hard way

Digitized by Google

way of living; and I do not believe that upon an average we had more ſick officers than the regulars. But the commander muſt be the firſt to give a good example; and above all the greateſt attention muſt be paid to allow the ſoldier to carry in his knapſack as little as poſſible. A ſhirt, a green foraging cap, one pair of ſtockings, and a few bruſhes are ſufficient. The knapſacks ought to be inſpected every week, and every thing ſuperfluous indiſcriminately burnt. But the time for being ſtricteſt is when the men have got booty from the enemy; you muſt inſiſt upon their ſelling off the whole inſtantly, or elſe they will load themſelves like beaſts of burthen, and be incapable of following the corps.

CHAP-

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

SECTION I.

Of the Manual Exerciſe for Light Infantry and Cavalry.

LIGHT corps are in general found to be indifferently drilled, and to underſtand nothing of manœuvres; their movements are not correct; nay, I have ſeen ſeveral which were hardly able to face to the right or left about, or march by ſections.

The principal cauſe of this evil is, that theſe corps are frequently raiſed in too great an hurry, and that an improper method is followed at firſt. The inſtruction begins according to cuſtom where it ought to end.

The whole attention is turned to a uſeleſs handling of arms and to trifles, while what is truly uſeful to ſuch a corps is forgotten. The corps is completed, the inſpector indulgent, and the muſter is paſſed; it then proceeds to the army, where it firſt begins to ſee its defects.

There

Digitized by Google

There are men who pretend to be acquainted with military matters, and who, while they are ignorant of the method of training light troops, call every thing of this nature uſeleſs pedantry. They ſay that in preſence of the enemy all theſe ſchool rules fall to the ground; that as light troops muſt carry every thing ſword in hand, or with charged bayonets, why ſhould they be tormented for nothing!

But theſe good folks do not conſider that to attack an enemy in that manner, a battalion or ſquadron muſt have been previouſly well diſciplined, ſince the force of their ſhock depends upon good order and compactneſs. From this falſe principle attacks and ambuſcades are frequently unſucceſsful, and the confuſion ariſes which prevails ſo often in rear-guards, occaſioning a ſevere loſs, and degenerating ſometimes into a complete rout. Many people falſely imagine, that drill and exerciſe are not neceſſary for light troops, becauſe they never are obliged to fight a pitched battle in cloſe order; however, ſuppoſing that a light corps, of which I have ſeen examples during the American war, ſhould have the good fortune to eſcape the bad conſequences which may attend want of proper inſtruction; yet ſurely it would be more ſatisfactory for a commander, and better deſerve the approbation of men of ſenſe, if he were to diſcipline his corps

ſo

Digitized by Google

ſo as to be calculated for all ſorts of duties; beſides, it looks well, and impreſſes even the enemy with a certain reſpect, when the appearance and diſcipline of a light corps are equal to that of a regiment of the line. The ſoldier himſelf feels a certain confidence and pride from the conſciouſneſs of his ſkill, and is prepared for every thing.

There is alſo another kind of perſons, who are appointed to light corps, becauſe they underſtand drilling; ſuch are of opinion, that when the ſoldier is taught to handle ſmartly his firelock, march well on the parade, and kneel briſkly, the object is obtained, and the ſcience of war exhauſted. Theſe people exerciſe the whole day, torment the poor ſoldier until the moment for taking the field arrives, and then the whole ſcience of the commander and his officers conſiſts in the knowledge of marching and the manual exerciſe. Believe me, it is not every one who is qualified for inſtructing a light corps in a proper manner, and is able to lead it in the field; a commander muſt have been brought up to it, and have been formed by campaigns.

The great maſter in the art of war ſaw that light troops muſt be kept on the peace eſtabliſhment, in order to form them, and make the moſt of them in war. This great king raiſed a proportionate number of regiments of huſſars,

Digitized by Google

augmented the yager corps to two battalions, and a ſhort time before his death, he formed ſeveral light infantry regiments: his royal ſucceſſor followed the ſame plan, and increaſed the light infantry to 20 battalions; theſe are well officered, and have men of talents and experience at their head. Several powers have lately followed the example, augmented their huſſars, and placed yager battalions upon their eſtabliſhment, of which they will find the advantage at the firſt war.

The recruits muſt be appointed to the companies as ſoon as enliſted, and begin the drill immediately, that they may not remain too long idle in the recruiting diſtricts.

As ſoon as the recruit can face to his right and left, let him march and wheel for a few days in ranks, without arms; after which, you will put the firelock into his hands, teach him the neceſſary motions, to prime, load, and fire, and practiſe him to fire at the target. You divide the companies into two or three platoons, and practiſe together thoſe who have made equal progreſs. The corps may be complete in its exerciſe in the ſpace of ſix weeks, if the officers and non-commiſſioned officers do their duty, by drilling twice a day, three hours at a time; and when the men are perfect in the manual, by devoting

Digitized by Google

voting the morning to fire at the target, and the afternoon to exercise and manœuvres.

The cleanliness of the soldier must also be attended to; for it is necessary to his comfort and health; and even in the field, when labouring under the greatest hardships, when a minute can be spared, the men must be ordered to wash, comb their heads, and shift. It must not be thought that it is impossible to keep the soldier clean during a hard campaign; there is nothing impossible! give your orders, support them with firmness, and you will see every obstacle vanish; it was the favourite principle of Colonel Donop, who fell at Redbank in America, and he never was disappointed in the application of it. The Hessian brigade of grenadiers occupied a winter cantonment in New Brunswick at the beginning of 1777; they were kept in constant alarm by the Americans, who had become very bold since the affair of Trainton, and were obliged to stand by their arms day and night without taking off their clothes. The brigade was quartered by companies in wretched and half ruined houses, and had hardly straw to lay upon; however, the cleanliness of the Hessian grenadiers when they came upon duty, was such as to attract the notice of the English themselves, who are naturally very clean, and excel all other polished nations in this respect. Nobody knows what the soldier

Digitized by Google

may be uſed to; accuſtom him to what is right, and you will obtain every thing from him. During the American war, the detachments and detached corps were for a whole campaign without women, and for whole months with only the ſhirt they had upon their backs. The Engliſh ſoldiers uſed to waſh their ſhirts themſelves, dried them expeditiouſly, and put them on again; the German ſoldiers ſaw it, and followed the example. We were ſoon perſuaded, that our linen could be waſhed without women, and many of our ſoldiers continued the ſame practice afterwards, when they found that it ſaved their purſe.

Before I proceed farther, I muſt ſay, that, in my opinion, the infantry of a light corps ought to be in two ranks; for, as theſe corps are frequently ſingle-handed againſt the enemy, it will encreaſe the front, and it is eaſier to march in line in two than three ranks through woods and buſhes; and the firing by ranks, which I have adopted, can be as well practiſed in two as three ranks. In an attack with charged bayonets, I am convinced, that if the corps drawn up in two ranks advances reſolutely upon the other in three, it will not be worſe off for that rank leſs, as the preſſure of one upon the other, of which the French tacticians ſpeak, exiſts only in the imagination.

If it were in my power, I would place the ſhorteſt

Digitized by Google

The Yager men in rear cannot cover their front rank without crowding & incommoding &c

ſhorteſt men in the front, and the talleſt in the ſecond rank, becauſe both will fire with more eaſe; and in an attack with the bayonet, the effect of this weapon would be greater, as, what is loſt in this caſe, by the diſtance of the ſecond rank, would be gained by their ſuperior ſize and the length of their arms; but if you place the ſmalleſt men in the ſecond rank, their bayonets cannot do much execution, and thoſe of the third, none at all, any more than the third rank in the cavalry. The American inſpector general, Van Steuben, introduced this practice in General Waſhington's army, and, in ſpite of cuſtom and prejudice, I did not find it gave a bad appearance; beſides, utility ought to be the firſt recommendation in war.

SECTION II.

Of Flanking, or acting in Open Order, or en Tirailleur.

WHEN a certain number of light infantry or light horſe fights diſperſed, it is called flanking, ſkirmiſhing, or acting *en tirailleur.* This kind of fighting requires more training than any other, as the light horſe or yager is generally left to

Digitized by Google

himſelf, and muſt follow his own judgment. Frequent uſe of calls muſt be made, and the men well practiſed to obey them, as given with the trumpet, bugle, or drum. They muſt alſo be taught to extend briſkly, form a kind of chain, or a half circle, and to occupy without delay the whole of ſuch ground as may be advantageous, or which has been pointed out to them. They muſt know how to outflank the enemy's tirailleurs, and be ſo alert and collected, that ſhould a ſingle flanker of the enemy ſeparate from his party, he muſt at the ſame inſtant be killed or made priſoner; and as they frequently engage ſingly, their bravery muſt ſometimes be temerity, and they muſt be good ſhots, in order to command the reſpect of the enemy. For theſe reaſons, every yager cannot be employed in this kind of duty, and the officers commanding companies muſt of courſe endeavour to know among their men ſuch as are fit for it.

Companies muſt be divided into ſections of flankers, according to individual merit; for inſtance, the braveſt and fitteſt non-commiſſioned officers and men will be called firſt flankers, the beſt after them are called ſecond, and the loweſt claſs will be the third. Although yagers be thus picked out for this kind of duty, every yager muſt nevertheleſs be taught to perform it, as in war it frequently happens, that whole companies and

Digitized by Google

and whole corps muſt be employed to ſkirmiſh, as in reconnoitring, or to conceal a manœuvre from the enemy.

SECTION III.

Of Retreating.

A RETREAT can be performed either in line by the whole corps, the light infantry in the center, riflemen on both wings, every platoon having its proportion of flankers detached to the rear and flanks, to cover the line, and ſkirmiſh during the retreat; or by platoons retiring *en echequier*; thoſe which have to make head againſt the enemy, will alſo ſend out their flankers to ſkirmiſh with the enemy, and cover the retreat. In the firſt inſtance, flankers muſt be relieved every hour, for neither the men nor their muſkets could ſtand it much longer, if the purſuit be cloſe and obſtinate. They ſhould be relieved in the following manner; every platoon muſt be previouſly divided into three or four ſections; when the firſt is to be relieved, the men muſt be cautioned, that at the word *flankers' relief*, the ſecond ſection muſt inſtantly extend, and relieve individually every man of the firſt ſection, ob-

Digitized by Google

ſerving not to ſtop the retreat in performing the relief, but proceed in the mean time; when the flankers of the firſt ſection ſee that their places are occupied, they retire ſlowly to their platoons, and form into ſection again. In the ſecond inſtance, the platoons which are to make head againſt the enemy, will relieve the flankers of the retreating platoons, at the diſtance of 2 or 300 paces, and the flankers of the retreating platoons muſt not fall in into their platoons, but a ſhort diſtance before the ſpot where it will be the turn of theſe platoons to make head again. The diſtance between theſe two lines muſt depend upon circumſtances and upon the ground, the uſual diſtance is 300 paces. If the flankers be overpowered, they muſt be inſtantly ſupported by another ſection, eſpecially thoſe on the flanks, who are moſt expoſed, and who muſt be very cautious, that the enemy do not outflank and cut them off. To prevent this, they ought always to form a half circle round each flank. Every company ſends an officer, and every ſection a non-commiſſioned officer to the ſkirmiſhers; each line a captain, who muſt be on horſeback in the field. In a retreat in line, a captain and three ſubalterns muſt be commanded for ſkirmiſhing.

In a woody and buſhy country, the beſt way will

Digitized by Google

will be to retire by alternate files, without flankers, and it can be performed in the beſt order.

SECTION IV.

Of Cavalry.

HAVING been bred in the infantry, I am not therefore ſufficiently converſant with this arm to treat of its details in a ſatisfactory manner. I muſt content myſelf with pointing out its principal duties.

Whatever a light dragoon has to perform on horſeback, he muſt be taught on foot; after which, he muſt learn to mount and diſmount from his horſe in a regular manner, to keep erect and firm upon his ſaddle, how to riſe in his ſtirrups, and cut the enemy: he muſt alſo be inſtructed to cut at a poſt with the ſabre, and to fire with piſtols in trotting and galloping. Cavalry muſt be frequently practiſed to wheel by four, by half ſquadrons, and whole ſquadrons. Frequent charges of 2000 paces ought to be made in full gallop, and the word of command, *halt!* be given unexpectedly, in order to ſee whether the men be attentive, and can manage their

Digitized by Google

their horſes. They muſt alſo be taught to ſaddle and fall in quickly and in good order, in caſe of alarm, or after having acted as ſkirmiſhers.

The riflemen of each ſquadron muſt be taught to fire true on horſeback, and on that account ought to have the beſt and quieteſt horſes.

All the movements of a light corps, either infantry or cavalry, muſt be regulated by the military inſtruments, and the men frequently practiſed to the different beatings or tunes, in order to prevent officers and non-commiſſioned officers from being obliged to halloo to the men, and make a great noiſe, which muſt occaſion confuſion, when circumſtances require that no time ſhould be loſt, and ſucceſs often depends upon ſeizing the favourable moment.

Should the corps be raiſed in the neighbourhood of a navigable river or of a ſea port, it would be highly proper to practiſe the men to embark in boats and land, for confuſion and frequent accidents are ſure to take place in this caſe, with troops that have not been uſed to it. This is in general entruſted to ſea officers, who care very little how the men get into the boats, ſo as there be the proper number, which creates ſuch a confuſion on landing, that much time is loſt, before a few thouſand men can form properly. Great attention muſt be paid when embarking, that the men obſerve the ſtricteſt ſilence;

Digitized by Google

ſilence; they muſt ſtep into the boats by files, and remain there in the ſame order as in the ranks, in order that at the moment of landing they may ſpring out by files, and form in ſucceſſion on the left of the firſt. Should the embarkation take place in the night, the greateſt care will be required to prevent confuſion.

With cavalry it is to be obſerved, that the men muſt be prevented from obſtructing each other; when the firſt man leads his horſe into the boat, he muſt inſtantly take poſt before him, the ſecond man does the ſame to the left of the firſt, the third man follows the firſt, and the fourth follows the ſecond, and ſo on till the boat be full. As a flat-bottomed boat does not in general carry more than 40 or 50 men, or 8 or 10 horſes, every officer commanding a company ought to take care that the boats which have his company on board keep together, in order that they may land at the ſame place. This ought to be principally attended to with infantry, as it may happen that they have to land in face of the enemy.

Cavalry muſt be uſed to ride their horſes into the boats, and to alight there, and lead them to the appointed place; when horſes are once uſed to it, the embarkation is ſoon performed.

The cavalry of our army in Virginia had become ſo perfect in embarking and diſembarking, by

Digitized by Google

by daily occaſions on our marches of paſſing the navigable rivers by which that country is ſo much interſected, and by our frequent expeditions upon the water, that it was aſtoniſhing how expeditiouſly and regularly they could perform it.

I ſaw an example of the contrary while a priſoner. Two or three hundred of the French huſſars of the legion de Lauzun had to croſs over York River, by Glouceſter, after the ſurrender of York, and ſpent the whole day before they could get over.

As ſoon as the corps is capable of manœuvring ſufficiently, inſtead of marching ſtraight to and from the place of exerciſe, it ought to be manœuvred all the way, that no time may be loſt.

All the different manners of breaking and forming ought to be practiſed, and the corps never go out without detaching advance and rear guards, and lateral patroles, and ſeizing that opportunity of inſtructing the officers and non-commiſſioned officers how to perform theſe duties in the field.

The duty of the field ought to be introduced in quarters. The place may be occupied in the ſame manner as if the enemy were near, an alarm poſt fixed, and officers and non-commiſſioned officers taught how to make a patrole. Falſe alarms muſt now and then be given, both day

Digitized by Google

day and night, in order to practiſe the men to fall in expeditiouſly and in good order. In fact, the commander of the corps muſt endeavour to give it general notions of the duties of the field, that the officers and non-commiſſioned officers may be in ſome degree prepared upon the moſt important points, previouſly to their taking the field.

CHAP-

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

OF THE DUTY OF AN OFFICER OF LIGHT INFANTRY.

SECTION I.

How an Officer of Light Infantry ought to act upon a March.

BEFORE I treat of the duty of a commander of a light corps in the field, I will mention the moſt important particulars in the duty of an officer of light infantry and cavalry, for how often does it happen in war, that an officer muſt act according to his own judgment? He may be ſent out on patrole, or on a long and dangerous march, in order to occupy a poſt, or relieve another: he may be ſent out with lateral patroles, advance and rear guards.

Before an officer goes off with his detachment, he ought to ſee if the ſoldiers have loaded their arms, and if in good order; whether their flints are faſt and well ſcrewed, their cartridges good and properly arranged in the pouch, for this,

Digitized by Google

this, as I have experienced myſelf, is often neglected, therefore an officer cannot be too attentive to this abuſe. As ſoon as he begins his march, he ought to keep his detachment together in the greateſt order, command his men to be ſilent, and allow none, except in the greateſt emergency, to fall out of the ranks. If, on his march, he paſs villages, farms, or mills, he cannot ſufficiently attend to his detachment, even if he ſhould be fully aſſured that during his march, he has nothing to ſuſpect from the enemy, for in war we ought never to conſider ourſelves ſecure. How often have I met with the enemy in a place where I had not the leaſt ſuſpicion of him, and how many parties are cut off during war, owing to the negligence and ignorance of an officer: on the contrary, an officer has nothing to apprehend in the greateſt danger, if he have his men fully prepared, and in the beſt order.

If an officer have reaſon to ſuſpect that he may fall in with the enemy (on whatever account he may have been ſent out by his commander), he cannot be too cautious and circumſpect. He ought to appoint a non-commiſſioned officer and a few privates, in proportion to his force, to march 50 or 100 paces before him; and another ſmall body at the ſame diſtance on both ſides, whom he muſt order to keep a good look-out,

Digitized by Google

out, ſo that nothing may eſcape their notice. They muſt ſearch every covered place on the road. Should there be a wood in the neighbourhood, through which the ſide flankers are to paſs, one or two ought to penetrate quite through it, whilſt the others remain at the diſtance of 100 or 150 paces behind, ſo that if thoſe in the wood ſhould be carried off by a concealed enemy, the latter can run back to report the occurrence to their officer. If any hill be near, one of them ought to be ſent to the top, to obſerve the country; or when they meet with cultivated fields, one ought to paſs through them to be aſſured that no concealed enemy lie within. They muſt conduct every peaſant whom they meet to the officer, who ought to queſtion him upon the following points, viz. what he knows of the enemy? Where he is? How ſtrong? What kind of troops? Whether he has artillery and baggage? Whether he is watchful and well diſciplined, or if his officers ride about the country, and if the men are often marauding and ſtraggling. Should they perceive any danger, one muſt run back, and make a ſign with his hand to the officer, who ſhould immediately go to the place, to ſee it himſelf. If he find that he is a match for the enemy's party, and the country favours concealment, he and his men ſhould lie down upon the ground on the ſide

Digitized by Google

ſide of the road: as ſoon as the enemy's detachment has paſſed them, he muſt fall upon it, and if infantry, with a loud ſhout, thereby confuſe it, and take it priſoner. In caſe, however, the enemy's party be cavalry, and the country be ſo interſected, that the enemy cannot charge him, he muſt wait until they come near, call out to the leader of the detachment, Halt! his men muſt level, and he muſt aſk them, whether they will loſe their lives or alight, and attempt by this means to make them priſoners.

If the enemy be ſtrong, and it be impoſſible to remain concealed, he ſhould endeavour to obſerve him, and retire, as ſoon as he thinks he has remarked every thing neceſſary, to give his commander timely notice of all that he has ſeen.

If an officer of light infantry has the advance guard, as it may happen in hilly and interſected countries, he may proceed, with reſpect to the march, in the above-mentioned manner, with this difference only, that he frequently makes a report to his commander of all that he ſees; and in this caſe he will do well, to keep at the head of the advance guard, in order to obſerve every thing himſelf. In the night time, when the eclaireurs and flankers ſhould not advance farther than 20 or 30 paces in front, and cannot ſee far around them, it behoves him and his men to obſerve the greateſt ſilence, to lie

Digitized by Google

down often upon the ground, and liſten if they can diſcover any thing. It is almoſt incredible, of what uſe we may be to our general, if we employ in ſuch inſtances, ſuitable circumſpection. On a march by night from Weſternover to Richmond in Virginia, where I led the advance guard of Arnold's corps, and when the general could receive no intelligence of the enemy, on account of all the inhabitants of the country having fled from their houſes, ſeven of the enemy (one of whom was a major) fell into my hands at intervals, in the ſpace of two hours: all of them had been ſent with written orders from the governor to the different commanders of the militia of the country, which threw a great light upon his operations. Should an officer meet with the enemy unawares in the night, he muſt give him a volley, and charge with bayonets, without troubling himſelf farther about his ſtrength, whereby the enemy, as he cannot ſee the ſtrength of his antagoniſt, will certainly be puzzled, and the commander will gain time to take proper meaſures.

If an officer have the command of a lateral patrole, he ſhould endeavour to cover that flank of the corps on which he marches, againſt every poſſible attack of the enemy. In the day-time he may withdraw 300 paces from the main body, and ſend a non-commiſſioned officer with 8

or

Digitized by Google

or 10 men to the diſtance of 150 paces from his flank, which non-commiſſioned officer may alſo detach two or three men to the ſame diſtance from his flank, who ſhould accurately ſearch the whole country, to ſee that no party of the enemy be concealed between him and the corps. If there be a hill in the neighbourhood, ſome ſhould paſs over it, to obſerve the country, and ought not (as I have ſeen lateral patroles do) to remain at the foot of it. Should they meet with ſmall pieces of water, or moraſſes, they muſt not leave them between the corps and themſelves, for by this means the lateral patroles might be cut off. In general, an officer who is ſent with a lateral patrole, cannot be too well inſtructed by his commander, as any careleſſneſs or want of dexterity, may coſt many men. For example, the Queen's Rangers and Ferguſon's Sharp Shooters on their march in Pennſylvania, ſome hours before the battle of Brandywine River on the 16th of September, 1777, fell into an ambuſcade, and loſt by a well-directed fire of the enemy more than 100 men, owing to the negligence of the lateral patroles. The Engliſh firſt battalion of light infantry met with the ſame misfortune, on their march from Pennſylvania to Avington's Hill.

Though an officer may not have diſcovered any thing of the enemy, he ought not however

Digitized by Google

to forget the neceſſary precaution on his return, for it might be poſſible, that a party of the enemy had concealed themſelves in the neighbourhood, in order to cut him off, or attack him at that time, when officers in general are more liable to conceive themſelves ſecure, and conſequently will be leſs vigilant. For inſtance, in the campaign of 1780, in the province of New York, I was ſent from Philipſburgh to Terretown, to procure intelligence of the enemy, and carry off ſome of his officers, who were in this place at home, and frequently remained in their houſes in the night-time; I left the camp before ſun-ſet, and as the road lay up Hudſon's River, and its oppoſite bank was occupied by the Americans, I was perceived by them; a party paſſed the river in boats in the night-time, in order to attack me upon my return in a defilé, which lay half way between our camp and Terretown; but as it began to be day-light, and the enemy found that I returned in the beſt order, and with every precaution, he did not think proper to attack me, but ſuffered me to proceed unmoleſted.

As rules ſupported by uſeful examples give the beſt inſtruction, I will here mention one from hiſtory, which is founded upon the ſame principle as the above. The Marſhal Von Schomberg, who commanded the French army in the Spaniſh war

Digitized by Google

war of 1664, wiſhed to cover Rouſillon; he therefore ſent off a conſiderable detachment, to ſecure the convoy which was coming from Perpignan, and was to paſs the village of St. Jean du Page, nine miles from thence; this detachment was poſted upon a height near the high road; its commander detached a non-commiſſioned officer with 30 men, to occupy a chapel a little in front, and which lay 300 paces from the main poſt, and commanded it, ſo that the officer could wholly overlook the plain of Boulon, where the Spaniards were encamped; the Spaniſh parties had to croſs the plain in their route, if they intended to make themſelves maſters of the French convoy: from Boulon to the two poſts there was a hollow way, in which the Spaniards could creep, without being perceived; the Marſhal Von Schomberg had therefore occupied another poſt, near a place called the Red Houſe, in order to ſecure himſelf from a ſurprize, which he might daily expect: this poſt had orders, as ſoon as it diſcovered any thing of the enemy, to light a fire, thereby giving notice to the neighbouring poſts, and allow them an opportunity of ſupporting each other in the beſt manner poſſible. A Spaniſh officer who had the beſt information, not only of the features of the country, but alſo of the out-poſts of the French, had entered the hollow way in

Digitized by Google

the night-time with 40 cavalry, and had placed himſelf between the three poſts, with a deſign to ſurprize the officer's detachment, when it ſhould relieve the poſts near the chapel, which was generally done in the morning. The French officer had ſcarcely arrived in the hollow way, when the Spaniards fell upon him unawares, and killed or wounded him and all his men, before he had time to collect himſelf. The Spaniſh officer gave the French officer two cuts with his ſabre, with this advice: "Learn your duty better for the future, and before you march your men through a country, examine it."

This example ſhews ſufficiently how neceſſary it is, for every officer to be fully acquainted with the ſituation of the country, through which he muſt paſs, eſpecially when it is woody and hilly, where he cannot ſee far before him. Should an officer, however, after having taken every precaution, meet with an enemy unawares, and be attacked on all ſides, and can find no reſource to return to the place from whence he came, he ought to endeavour to find out a church, mill, or houſe in the neighbourhood, go to it, occupy it, and rather ſacrifice all, than become a priſoner diſgracefully. In what manner theſe poſts are beſt fortified under ſuch circumſtances, ſee the 3d Section of this Chapter.

SECTION

Digitized by Google

SECTION II.

Of the Duty of an Officer of Light Infantry on Piquets or Out-Poſts.

AS the rules, to which an officer of light infantry ought to adhere, upon piquet or out-poſts, very much agree in principle with thoſe which an officer of cavalry ought to obſerve; I refer the reader, in order to avoid unneceſſary repetition, to the firſt Section in the enſuing Chapter, and ſhall only briefly mention the following particulars.

As ſoon as an officer arrives at his poſt, has relieved the ſentries, and has received every information from the officer whom he relieves, he ought to obſerve the country with attention, acquaint himſelf well with the ſituation of his poſts, and enquire where the roads lead; where, and at what diſtance the enemy is, in order that he may acquaint his ſuperior officers when they viſit the poſts, with every particular. He muſt take notice on what ſide he could retreat, and where and how far he can ſend his patroles. In the day-time, he may allow his men to place their arms together, but is not to ſuffer them to ſtroll: as ſoon as night approaches, he muſt order one half of his men, either by ranks or pla-

Digitized by Google

toons, under arms; permitting the other half to reſt, but not to ſleep by the fire; in which caſe, they muſt keep their muſkets between their knees, that they may be inſtantly ready, on the firſt fire from the ſentries.

Should the enemy be near, he muſt remain with his piquet under arms throughout the night, and withdraw behind, or on one ſide of the fire, ſo that he may not be diſcovered by him if attacked, and that he may by the help of the fire diſcover him: it is beſt, when the enemy is near, to be without any fire, if the weather permit, or at leaſt, to have as little as poſſible. He ought to ſend out patroles continually, who ſhould viſit the chain of ſentries; and alſo between every relief, which in the night ought to take place every hour, ſend a non-commiſſioned officer, or truſty private, ſome hundred paces in front of his ſentries, who ſhould lie down upon the ground, and liſten if they can hear the enemy. An officer ſhould, eſpecially, be alert and vigilant on his poſts, hold himſelf in readineſs for every event that may happen, and adhere ſtrictly to his orders. When the enemy is ſo near, which often happens with light troops, that the poſts on both ſides can converſe together (for inſtance, when both armies are ſeparated by a ſmall river) he muſt not on any account ſuffer it, and far leſs fall into that fault himſelf, for, from this the worſt conſe-

Digitized by Google

conſequences may often enſue. I once profited by ſuch an opportunity myſelf, to reconnoitre an American poſt: it was when Sir Harry Clinton, on his march from Charleſtown, wiſhed to paſs the Stony River by Stony Ferry, which was occupied on the left bank by Pulawſki's corps. On our ſide, or on the right bank, was a deep moraſs, acroſs which there was a dyke of 2000 paces in length, extending as far as the very right bank of the river, and which, as the river was not above 200 feet broad, though very deep, could be completely ſcoured by the enemy with ſmall arms. The Engliſh general was informed that a row galley was laying in the river for the defence of this poſt; ſeveral ſmall parties had been already ſent out to reconnoitre, but had not been able to approach the bank, on account of the heavy fire of the enemy; I therefore reſolved to attempt myſelf to enter into converſation with the officer; I drew near the poſt, ſaw an officer walking on the oppoſite bank, proceeded on within muſket ſhot, and made a ſign with my hat, to make him underſtand that I wiſhed to ſpeak to him; he conſented, and I endeavoured, during our converſation, to diſcover what I wiſhed, in order to make a ſatisfactory report to Lord Cornwallis, to whom it was very agreeable information.

SECTION

Digitized by Google

SECTION III.

Of fortifying and defending Caſtles, Churches, Farms, and Houſes.

TO fortify and defend ſuch poſts, deſerves particular attention. A ſkilful defence frequently contributes to the happy ſucceſs of great undertakings, and a handful of men is capable, in ſuch caſe, of reſiſting a whole army.

A general may indeed aſſign ſuch poſts, but he can contribute nothing to their defence, for this wholly depends upon the ſkill and bravery of the officers to whom they are intruſted. It requires more ſenſe than experience, and an officer who has theory, will know how to apply it, if he be not flurried by the approach of the enemy, and may on ſuch an occaſion acquire uncommon reputation, and eſtabliſh his fortune.

An officer who may be forced either by neceſſity to throw himſelf into ſuch a poſt, or may be ordered to defend one, ought, in the firſt place, to take care to turn out the inhabitants. Before he prepare his defences, he ſhould (if time permit) go round it, and obſerve on which ſide the enemy may have the greateſt advantage, in order that he may there apply the ſtrongeſt reſiſtance.

Should the poſt be a church, ſurrounded by a wall,

Digitized by Google

wall, he ought to occupy both, if he have a ſufficient number of men, and make uſe of the church as a citadel, or in the laſt extremity, as a place of retreat; for it is always better to oppoſe more than one obſtacle to the enemy.

To this end, the church benches ſhould be placed behind the church yard wall, that the men may ſtand upon them, and be enabled to fire over it. The entrance muſt be ſtopped up with litter or earth, and before the church door muſt be dug a wide trench, over which ſhould be laid a plank, in order to go in and out, which muſt on an attack be withdrawn. Some trees ought to be prepared *en abbatis*, and placed by the church door, which ſhould, as ſoon as the men who defended the wall have all retreated into the church, be dragged into the door-way; the church benches ſhould be ſo placed, that the men can fire out of the windows. Before the men who defended the wall retire into the church, it ought to be occupied by a few, in order to favour the retreat of thoſe who defended the church yard.

If time permit, loop-holes ſhould be made in the church, eſpecially on both ſides of the corners, as theſe are the weakeſt parts where the enemy may approach without danger, and ſet fire to it.

If you have a dwelling-houſe to defend, you may proceed in the ſame manner; ſtop up the doors

Digitized by Google

doors as well as it can be done, and make your defence through the windows, if there has been no time to make loop-holes. The floors of the higher rooms ſhould, however, be taken up a few feet over the doors of every ſtory, in order to fire down upon the enemy, and be able to drive him back, ſhould he attempt to occupy the lower room. The roof of the houſe ſhould be taken off, and the loft covered with litter or earth, that the grenades of the howitzers (if the enemy employ any) may not ſet fire to it. Stones and clumps of wood ſhould be laid ready in the loft, as alſo in every room, in order to annoy the enemy if he ſhould ſtorm. The moſt reſolute men muſt be ſtationed on both ſides of the entrance, to drive away the moſt daring of the enemy, who would force their way. Pitchforks ſhould be at hand, to puſh away the ladder by which the enemy may attempt to mount. Should there be more buildings near the poſt, which cannot conveniently be occupied, but which, however, might be of great detriment in the hands of the enemy, they ought, if there be time, to be pulled down or burnt; or if through humanity, one does not wiſh to do ſo, the ſide from which the enemy might injure us, ſhould at leaſt be pulled down, or rendered uſeleſs. Above all things, the ammunition muſt, on the attack of the enemy, be ſparingly uſed, and not a ſhot fired which will not do execution.

Should

Digitized by Google

Should the enemy ſend an officer to offer terms, when circumſtances require an obſtinate reſiſtance, he muſt not be admitted, but be deſired not to approach, as no intercourſe will be ſuffered; or ſent back with a ſurly anſwer, ſuch as, let him attack boldly, and he will find courageous opponents, or let him come again in a month. By ſuch a reſolute anſwer the enemy may, if he is not abſolutely forced to do it, be deterred from an attack. If a ſkilful officer, after having done every thing in his power, finds that the enemy ſtill perſiſts, and becomes ſo enraged by an obſtinate reſiſtance, that there is no hope left of obtaining good terms, he muſt not, however, be depreſſed, but encourage his men by his own example to ſtill greater bravery: a brave man will always find reſources, when the baſe and cowardly will ſhudder; for at ſuch a time, there is no diſſembling, and true valour is here diſtinguiſhed from aſſumed confidence: greatneſs of ſoul, and a real knowledge of war, at no time ſhine more conſpicuous, than in theſe difficult moments; ſuch qualities give us aſtoniſhing and unexpected reſources; for what weapon is ſtronger than neceſſity, when our welfare and lives depend upon it? It is ſcarcely credible, to what a ſoldier may be brought, by the good example of his officer. By confidence and eſteem, he may rouſe in him the courage of a lion. How often have I thought that all was

loſt,

Digitized by Google

loſt, and my men panick-ſtruck, when a ſhort and animated ſpeech revived their ſpirits, and turned the ſcale. Near Portſmouth in Virginia, I had placed upon a dyke by Scotſbak, a non-commiſſioned officer with 16 yagers; the enemy met and purſued the patrole, which I had juſt ſent out, and attacked this poſt with ſuch fury, that the piquet was forced to give way. I haſtened with 16 men to their aſſiſtance, and arrived there as the enemy was about to attack it with whole battalions: I ordered the men to ſtand their ground, the dyke being ſo narrow, that not more than three men in front could paſs at a time: here is the ſpot, ſaid I, where you may, as Heſſians, acquire great reputation in the eyes of the Engliſh. All went well; I was wounded; no yager abandoned me, and the enemy gave up his undertaking, after loſing many men: a few yagers had the honour of maintaining a poſt, in preſence of the Engliſh, which General Arnold had given up as loſt, and where he had left the yagers unſupported, for fear of ſacrificing too many men. After the affair, the general out of national pride was inwardly hurt, to think that a handful of Europeans had reſiſted, and driven back whole battalions of his countrymen.

I repeat it once more, that when all is loſt, we muſt not be depreſſed, nor ever think of ſurrendering,

Digitized by Google

dering, but perſuade the men, that there will be no hope of quarter, in order to make them deſperate. As ſoon as it is night, collect your party, ſilently prepare an iſſue, ſally out on the oppoſite ſide to which you wiſh to retreat, and make your way ſword in hand through the enemy; this however muſt be done with the greateſt ſilence, as the enemy, who perhaps by the warmth and fatigue of the day is weary, and quiet, conſidering his booty as certain, will not expect ſo bold an attempt; for night is the mother of fear, and aſtoniſhing things may be undertaken with its aſſiſtance. The following example will ſupport my aſſertion, and ſhew how far an able defence of theſe kind of poſts may contribute to ſucceſs in the great occurrences of war. Sir William Howe, in the American campaign of 1777, had his camp before German Town, two leagues from Philadelphia, which was ſupported on the right by the river Delaware, and on the left by the river Shulkil, near the Waterfall. General Waſhington being acquainted with the lethargy of the Engliſh general, had advanced as far as Narrentown, and made a forced march in the night of the 3d and 4th of October, and attacked at day-break the right wing of the Engliſh army ſo furiouſly and unexpectedly, that the light infantry, which was poſted half a league in

Digitized by Google

in front of this wing, was completely routed. The then Lieutenant Colonel Muſgrave, who was poſted near Tew's Houſe with three companies of the 40th regiment of foot, a little diſtance behind the light infantry, had ſcarcely time to take up arms; he perceived in a moment, that ſhould he retreat, the army which was in perfect ſecurity would have hardly time to take up arms; he therefore immediately reſolved to throw himſelf and the three companies (which did not amount to more than a hundred men) into the above-mentioned houſe, from which he could command the road the Americans muſt take; but as the enemy was ſo cloſe upon him, that he could not make any great preparations for defence, he had the houſe doors blocked up with tables and chairs. General Waſhington, who could not turn this poſt, and was expoſed to its galling fire, remained (fortunately for Sir William Howe) with his whole army near this poſt, which a ſingle regiment might have maſked; he had artillery brought up, and ordered his beſt regiments to attack it: Lieutenant Colonel Muſgrave, who preferred the honour of the Britiſh nation to his life, repeatedly repulſed the enemy with great ſlaughter, and held out againſt a whole army, until Sir William Howe, being rouſed from his ſlumber, approached with his army, and drove General Waſhington back

again

Digitized by Google

again with a ſevere loſs, for which favourable turn, Sir William Howe had alone to thank the bravery and judgment of Lieutenant Colonel Muſgrave and a handful of his valiant countrymen; for had the latter had leſs preſence of mind, and retreated, the right wing, who thought themſelves perfectly ſecure, could not have got under arms in time, and the whole army would undoubtedly have been diſgracefully routed (eſpecially as even after the firing of the light infantry had began, the news of the approach of the enemy was rejected at head quarters as falſe and impoſſible), having Philadelphia full of rebellious inhabitants, and the Delaware in the rear. I really believe, that few generals have ever been in a more critical ſituation, and owe more to fortune, than Sir William Howe on the above-mentioned day. Had the Heſſian officer, who was poſted with 50 yagers, not far from Trainton near the great houſe, fortunately acted upon the ſame principle on the approach of Waſhington, the three regiments would not have had the misfortune to become priſoners, and Colonel Rall (who had always been reckoned a very good and ſkilful officer) had not here loſt his life, nor the reputation which he had acquired in the ſeven years war.

I do not mention this, with an intention to cenſure the actions of great men, but merely to

Digitized by Google

ſhew how neceſſary it is, that an officer ſhould ſtudy his profeſſion in his youth; for from the leaſt careleſſneſs, or the leaſt fault in war, whole provinces, and indeed whole nations may be loſt. An officer who takes a pleaſure in ſtudying ſuch examples, and is deſirous of information, ſhould read the Hiſtory of Charles the 12th, publiſhed by Adlerfeld, which is full of truly heroic actions.

SECTION IV.

Of the Excurſions of ſmall Parties of Light Infantry.

IT is aſtoniſhing, that the power of making incurſions into the enemy's country with ſmall parties, is aſcribed to huſſars alone. One cannot eaſily find an example in the hiſtory of the ſeven years war, of an officer of light infantry having diſtinguiſhed himſelf in this manner. In the American war it was the contrary; for the light infantry alone was intruſted with this duty, and we cannot remember any example excepting one, where a ſmall party of cavalry have performed this duty: this was, when Sir William (now General) Harcourt carried off General Lee from

Digitized by Google

from his quarters. On the contrary, how many examples can be given during that war, where ſmall detachments of the American light infantry have carried off generals and officers of the Engliſh army from the midſt of their quarters.

I am therefore fully convinced, that with light infantry as many excurſions may be undertaken as with cavalry, eſpecially in interſected countries; for inſtance, in Holſtein and Sleſwick, where one may by the help of frequent coppices creep along undiſcovered; the light infantry has this advantage over the cavalry, that they can conceal themſelves with facility, and the higheſt hills, the thickeſt woods, and the moſt impenetrable moraſſes, are no obſtacles to them. Moreover, light infantry are not neceſſitated to provide for horſes, and have only to think of their own ſubſiſtence. Lakes and navigable rivers are more eaſily croſſed by foot ſoldiers than cavalry, for at every place which lies upon a river, may be found boats to carry them over, which can be ſeized in the night-time with very little trouble.

In the American war, who could have checked the excurſions of the New Englanders, and the militia of the province of New Jerſey, upon Long Iſland, though the former were ſeparated by the mouth of the river Hudron, and the latter by the Streight from the Engliſh poſſeſſions; and how few of their parties, each of which

Digitized by Google

only conſiſted of 8 or 10 men, had the misfortune to be taken priſoners? What diſtant excurſions have not Brand and Butler undertaken? They have gone more than once, with a handful of men, from Canada into Pennſylvania, and I really believe, that if theſe two enterprizing men had been ſupported by the Engliſh, the concluſion of that war would not have been ſo diſadvantageous to Great Britain. But ſome may ſay, theſe were Indians!—but there were alſo Europeans with them, who, to be ſure, were not ſo effeminate as our petit-maitres are, who cannot live an hour without bread and ſtrong liquors. Theſe men often lived whole months upon game, and why cannot Europeans live upon it alſo? If an officer only take a delight in this kind of warfare, and introduce that ſevere diſcipline, that no ſoldier dare attempt to murmur, he will find nothing too arduous, though it may even appear impoſſible. In the campaign of Virginia, the army had frequently no bread, and I never heard them murmur. I had once 10 or 12 yagers who were without ſhoes, and were forced to make ſhift with cow hides; they began to grumble, I puniſhed one of them ſeverely, and the reſt were in a ſhort time ſo reconciled, that they were joking each other upon their new faſhioned kind of ſhoes.

For theſe enterprizes, none but reſolute men are

Digitized by Google

are fit; men accuſtomed to a rigid diſcipline, alert, uſed to marching, and who, by the hardſhips of war, are enured to every thing, with an officer at their head who underſtands his profeſſion, knows how to acquire a proper knowledge of the countries through which he muſt paſs, and braves every difficulty which would appear impoſſible to be ſurmounted to the common herd of men. Suppoſing for inſtance, an army be in Lower Heſſen, Weſtphalia, or Hanover, and the enemy have occupied Gottingen, Caſſel, Marburg, Gieſen, Hanau, Frankfort, and all the poſts on the Rhine as far as Coblentz; who can hinder an officer with 20 or 30 men from going from Weſtphalia into the neighbourhood of Rhinefels and Coblentz to levy contributions, and put all the garriſons into ſuch fear, that no one dare any longer truſt himſelf out of the gates; for the farther we are from the theatre of war, the leſs we hazard; and under ſuch circumſtances, many couriers and chief officers muſt fall into our hands. Suppoſing all theſe garriſons, vexed to ſee their officers carried off in ſuch a manner from their very gates, ſhould exert themſelves to deſtroy or take this detachment, how can they ſucceed againſt thoſe who are here to-day and gone to-morrow; who can ſo eaſily conceal themſelves behind every buſh, and find plenty of retreats, and ſteal in

Digitized by Google

ſafety through the large foreſts, with which Germany is covered.

An officer who wiſhes to apply himſelf to this duty, in which he may gain great reputation in the world, ſhould eſpecially acquire a knowledge of thoſe countries through which he muſt paſs. He may be aſſiſted by two means. In the firſt place, he ought to have good maps, and ſecondly, ſhould learn by queſtioning the inhabitants of the country, as to the direction of the roads, the diſtance of towns, where there are foreſts, hills, hollow ways, defilés, ferries, and bridges, all of which he ought to compare with his map.

When you leave any place, it ſhould be done as ſecretly as poſſible, march in the night-time, and during the day lie concealed in the thickeſt foreſts. During the night you ſhould approach the highway between two of the enemy's garriſons, and endeavour to cut off couriers or officers. But every detachment you may find in your way, however weak, muſt be left unmoleſted; for in this caſe you do not go out to fight, but to annoy the enemy without endangering yourſelf. If you be forced to march in the day-time, endeavour to avoid all inhabited places and highways, that the country people may not betray you, and when you meet with a ſingle inhabitant, whoever he may be, take him along with

Digitized by Google

with you, as long as your ſafety requires, obſerving, however, to treat him with civility, and not ſuffer the men to inſult him, as a contrary behaviour would exaſperate and incite him to revenge, whenever an opportunity offers.

Should want of proviſions oblige you to enter a village, approach it by night, remain concealed in the neighbourhood, and ſend into it a non-commiſſioned officer with a few men; he ſhould endeavour to learn in the firſt houſe where the lord of the manor or the municipal officer reſides, demand proviſions for ſeveral hundred men, take as much as you want, and oblige them to carry it to the place where the detachment is concealed: queſtion the peaſants about the roads and places where you have no thoughts of going, permit them to return, and march for ſome leagues in the direction of the road which you intend to take the next day.

When you wiſh for information reſpecting the country or the enemy, you muſt endeavour to ſurpriſe in the night-time ſome nobleman or officer, prieſt or foreſter, in his own houſe, who may give you the neceſſary information, of which make memorandums upon your map. If in an enemy's country, give yourſelf out for an officer of their army. In Virginia, when I gave myſelf out as an aid-de-camp to the Marquis de la Fayette, this deception would in all probabi-

Digitized by Google

lity have ſucceeded, if the appearance of two Engliſh marauders had not accidentally betrayed the approach of the Engliſh army; as an American municipal officer would have ignorantly been the cauſe of my carrying off an American colonel.

One may make uſe of another artifice to procure information: give yourſelf out as an officer, who leads the advance guard of a ſtrong corps, which is deſtined upon a ſecret expedition: for example, in the winter expedition of 1776, when Colonel Donop wiſhed to penetrate as far as the neighbourhood of Philadelphia, I was ſent from Bourdentown, in the province of New Jerſey, to Burlington, with only 1 officer, 30 grenadiers, and 10 yagers, the colonel not wiſhing to expoſe more men: this was to get intelligence whether the American row galleys held their ſtations in the Delaware near that town. I had to paſs in my route within two leagues of the right flank of the corps under General Miflin, who was quartered in and all round Montholly, and whoſe parties were ranging the country as far as Burlington, in order to maintain a communication with this town, and cover his left flank. At day-break, I arrived ſafely at Yorkſhire Bridge, a ſhort half league from Burlington; I found two houſes near the bridge, which I immediately ſo ſurrounded, that

no

Digitized by Google

no one could come out. Fortunately for me, there was ſo great a fall of ſnow that nobody was upon the road, and the enemy's parties, owing probably to the bad weather, kept themſelves in their quarters. I made every enquiry of the inhabitants of both houſes, eſpecially reſpecting the row galleys. One aſſured me, that Burlington was occupied by the marines of the galleys, which were at anchor before the town. The other, however, aſſured me quite the contrary. As I ſhould have been aſhamed to return with a falſe report, I deſired one of the inhabitants to conduct me to the mayor of the town, took two yagers and two grenadiers with me, leaving the men concealed behind the two houſes, and directed my officer, in caſe he ſhould hear any firing in the town, to conſider it as a ſign, that the enemy was there, and I taken priſoner: upon which he muſt make the beſt of his retreat through the foreſts up the Delaware, and report the whole affair to Colonel Donop. I went on direct for the mayor's houſe, which was at the entrance of the town, remained on horſeback, and took my ſervant with me, who was well armed, having ordered the four men to follow me, at the diſtance of 100 or 150 paces, directing the firſt to keep within ſight of me. As ſoon as I fired a piſtol, they were to diſcharge their pieces in the town, and ſave themſelves as well

as

Digitized by Google

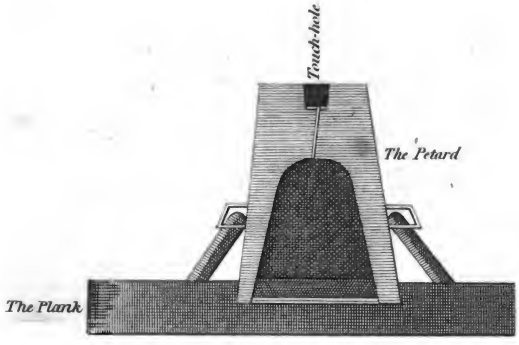
as they could. I arrived at the mayor's houſe, and called him to the door, who, being no friend to the Engliſh, anſwered all my queſtions equivocally, and with a myſterious countenance. I commanded him in a ſurly manner to provide ſufficient proviſions for Colonel Donop's corps, who were approaching, rode full gallop through the town to the bank of the Delaware, and reconnoitred the row galleys, which were lying at anchor in the middle of the river. A mob ſoon collected, ſome of whom appeared to be ſeamen, and looked upon me with aſtoniſhment, as I did not ſpeak a ſingle word to them. I galloped back again through the town, called the four men to me, retreated as faſt as I poſſibly could, and arrived ſafely at Bourdentown, where they had almoſt given me up as loſt.

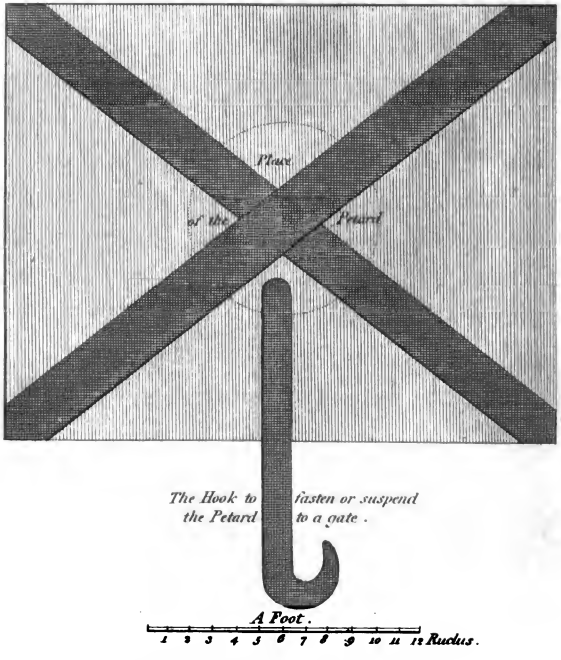
I mention this example to ſhew the young officer, that he muſt not always fully rely upon the intelligence of country people; and that it is better to fall a ſacrifice, than to outlive the ſhame of having made a falſe report, which might be productive of the worſt conſequences. It is ſcarcely credible, how much that man will hazard, who prefers honour to life, and the general good to his own. The ſaying of Xenophon cannot be too much attended to:—" Why do I wait any longer to diſtinguiſh myſelf in the world?"

SEC-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google





Neele sc. 352 Strand.

Published by T. Egerton Whitehall Oct.r 5. 1803.

Digitized by Google

SECTION V.

Of Petards.

AS I have promiſed in the firſt ſection to treat of the uſe of Petards, I think it cannot be better introduced, than in this chapter, in which I am treating of the duty of an officer of light infantry.

The prejudice which many perſons of great military knowledge have againſt uſing the petard, may ariſe perhaps from the example of the beſt generals of the preſent age, who have never made uſe of it, and we can only remember one inſtance, in a long ſeries of years, where it has been uſed. This was at the ſiege of Bender in the laſt war, between the Ruſſians and Turks, when the former employed one in ſtorming that town, and which Captain Stein attached, and thereby rendered his name immortal. Be as it may, there is however no rule without an exception, and I am fully convinced, that it might be employed on many occaſions in war. For inſtance, why could it not be uſed to break open the gates of a ſmall town, ſurrounded with a wall and a ſhallow ditch, of which there are ſo many in Germany? Such a place, if defended by enterprizing men, ſword in hand, may offer great obſta-

Digitized by Google

obſtacles, and coſt many men. But when once a petard is properly fixed againſt the gates, there will be no great difficulty in opening them by the aſſiſtance of a few carpenters with a trifling loſs, as they muſt already be ſhattered to pieces by its exploſion.

It may be ſaid perhaps, that this can be done with artillery. True: but if we wiſh to carry on ſpeedily a ſecret and important enterprize, we cannot take much artillery along with us, and perhaps none at all, when on the contrary, a few petards are eaſily carried; beſides, a few cannon balls have but little effect upon gates, make only a hole through without ſhattering them, eſpecially if they be old and rotten and do not reſiſt the ball; moreover, it requires a great number of ſhots, and much time to ſhatter them to pieces, and at the ſame time ſpreads an alarm. The petard, however, makes but one exploſion, and the gates are ſhattered at once.

It may alſo be ſaid, that ſeveral brave and ſkilful officers might probably loſe their lives before they could ſucceed in attaching the petard. I do not mean, that it muſt be uſed where the enemy is prepared, but only when we can come unawares upon him, and when there is no time to be loſt. It is eſpecially uſeful to light troops and flying corps, as ſome of them may be conveyed with leſs inconvenience than the ſmalleſt field

Digitized by Google

field piece. Had Colonel Donop been furniſhed with a few, or indeed with only one petard at the attack of Redbank, this brave man would doubtleſs have been ſucceſsful, and many a valiant Heſſian grenadier, and many an excellent ſoldier of Young Lorberg's regiment, would not have fallen a ſacrifice; for theſe reſolute men had reached the gates before the Americans were aware of it, but which their courage alone could not open, and thus theſe uncommonly brave men fell victims, one after another; we had ſome howitzers and 6 pounders with us, but the ſituation of the gates prevented our uſing them. I converſed upon this affair with one of the French officers, who ſerved at that time as a volunteer with the Americans, and who had been in this place during the attack; his opinion correſponded exactly with my own.

As the petard belongs to the ſcience of artillery, which is ſtudied by few, (though every officer ſhould endeavour to acquire as much knowledge of each branch of the art of war as is indiſpenſibly neceſſary, in order that when he arrives to a higher rank, and may happen to have the command of a few field pieces, he may not find himſelf in the dangerous ſituation of not knowing how to uſe them) I will here offer a ſhort deſcription of the petard, ſufficient to give an officer ſome idea of it; whereby, ſhould an opportu-

Digitized by Google

portunity occur, he will know how to act. The adjoined plate will give a ſtill clearer idea of it.

Petards are in general delivered ready from the park of artillery; but as I know from experience, that in caſe of neceſſity, any large apothecary's or kitchen mortar may anſwer the purpoſe, I will explain the art of loading them; and as many officers, though deſirous of information, may not, either becauſe they cannot afford, or have no opportunity to purchaſe books on artillery, I will here cite the inſtructions of Mr. Le Blond and Mr. Von St. Remy. Reſpecting the neceſſity of eſtabliſhing a military library in every garriſon, I will leave to the judgment of military men.

The firſt ſays, warm the petard in ſuch a manner, that you can bear to lay your hand upon it. Put into it 2½ inches deep ſome very fine gunpowder, that has been ſprinkled with ſpirit of wine, and carefully beat it down, ſo that the powder keeps its grain; over this, put a thin layer of ſublimate mercury, then powder, afterwards mercury, and ſo on, until it is full. Cover the charge with two ſheets of paper, lay an inch thick of etoupille, and beat all firm together. Pour over it a melted compoſition of one pound of brickduſt and half a pound of pitch or calophonium, which muſt be covered with an iron plate half an inch thick, having three prongs fixed

Digitized by Google

fixed into a ſtrong piece of plank, obſerving that the plate fit the petard exactly. Preſs this plate upon the above compoſition, when warm, in order that what is ſuperfluous may run over the ſides. One may alſo pour ſome of the compoſition round the rim of the plank, and faſten the petard to it before the materials cool. The pipes leading to the touch-hole muſt be made of iron, and about 3 inches in length.

The latter ſays, put into the petard double the quantity of powder it would contain without forcing it down, and cover it with ſtrong double paper or felt, upon which lay wooden plugs of the ſame ſize as the bore, which ſhould be knocked down upon the powder, though ſo carefully, that the powder preſerves its grain; then fill up the remaining ſpace of the petard with tow, yellow wax, or Greek pitch, and cover the whole with waxed cloth.

But as the above foreign materials cannot always be at hand when neceſſity requires, and as the powder alone is the cauſe of its operations, I will communicate a ſhorter method of loading it.

Fill up the interior with powder in ſuch a manner, that you have forced into it double the quantity that it would contain without any preſſure or ſhaking, taking care that the powder preſerves its grain, as it would otherwiſe loſe much of

Digitized by Google

of its power. When it is filled up in this manner within three quarters of an inch of the top, lay tow upon the powder, and over this a wooden plug, which muſt fit the bore of it exactly. Cover this with a doubled linen cloth, which has been dipped in turpentine, or ſome eſſential-oil, and pitch it all over ſo well, that the air cannot come to the powder. Afterwards faſten the petard with iron hoops and ſcrews upon the piece of plank, drive a tin pipe into the touch-hole, and fill it with one part of ſalt-petre and two of meal powder mixed together.

The petardeer, who is commonly an officer who volunteers for that ſervice, by which he may acquire the greateſt honour, and eſtabliſh his fortune, takes the petard, a hammer, ſome ſtrong nails, and a lighted match, approaches the gates as privately as he can, to which he intends to attach it, drives in a nail, hangs the petard upon it, and having ſufficiently ſecured it, ſets fire to it, and either lies down upon the ground, or runs off until it has burſt: the latter, however, is the more dangerous. As ſoon as it has inforced its effects, the detachment advances near, with a number of carpenters, who have concealed themſelves until ſuch has taken place, hew down the ſhattered remains, and make themſelves maſters of it.

One may eaſily conceive, that ſuch an enterprize

Digitized by Google

prize will not be undertaken by a man of the lower caſt; he muſt be poſſeſſed of the moſt undaunted courage, and prefer honour to life; for ſhould he be perceived by the enemy, he is ſure of being expoſed to the moſt terrible fire, as the enemy will exert his utmoſt to kill a petardeer. But, however dangerous, very few opportunities will offer, where an officer can better give proof of his courage, and acquire more reputation.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE DUTY OF AN OFFICER OF LIGHT CAVALRY.

SECTION I.

Of Grand Guards.

AS the welfare of a light corps or detachment alone depends upon its piquets or grand guards, they ſhould be ſo placed, that their rear be free, in order that the enemy cannot ſurpriſe them by the help of a buſh, wood, or ſuch like covert. Their videttes muſt be ſo poſted, that they can command an extenſive view on all ſides, and that nothing can approach unnoticed.

If the country permit, you cannot do better than place the grand guard behind the creſt of a height, in order to conceal it from the enemy. The officer or non-commiſſioned officer will do well to chooſe, during his guard, ſuch a ſtation for himſelf, as to have his videttes in ſight, in order that if one of them fall back full ſpeed, he can

Digitized by Google

can haſten to meet him, and learn the cauſe as ſoon as poſſible, and thereby be able to make a timely report of it to his commander.

The videttes muſt be double, and poſted in the day-time in open places on ſome riſing ground in the neighbourhood, to the diſtance of 400 or 500 paces in front of the poſt. In the night it is beſt to place them ſo as to look up hill, for a man on horſeback will ſee further in this manner than if he looked to the plain.

The videttes muſt keep their piſtols or carbines in their hands, and be well inſtructed to look continually around them, that they may not be ſurpriſed by the enemy: as ſoon as they diſcover any thing of him, one of them muſt give a ſignal by a ſhot, and gallop back to make his report to the grand guard.

Should the country be ſo interſected, that the videttes cannot ſee far before them, they ſhould be placed double, within ſight of each other, and poſted as forward as poſſible, which ſhould be particularly done near hollow ways, that have many windings which hinder an extenſive view.

The officer or non-commiſſioned officer of a grand guard ought to endeavour to acquaint himſelf with the country around; and to this end, as ſoon as he comes on the poſt he is to occupy or relieve, ſhould ride round it with the relief himſelf, that he may obſerve whence the

Digitized by Google

enemy may come, and be prepared for every event.

He ſhould alſo be acquainted with the country in his rear, that he may know, when attacked, where to retreat. If he ſhould not be covered on this ſide by poſts, or have a ſafe communication, he ought to ſecure his rear by frequent patroles.

If on the relief of a grand guard, an officer find any thing faulty, with reſpect to the ſtationed videttes, that one or more are not placed ſo advantageouſly as they ought, and would be better or more ſecurely ſtationed in another place, he muſt immediately report it.

In order to avoid any miſunderſtanding in ſuch caſes, it is beſt to report ſuch particulars in writing; and an officer would do well, always to carry with him pen, ink, and paper or cards, to be ready on like occaſions. He muſt not be ſatisfied with that mode of reaſoning which is too frequent in the army, and ſay that, the grand guard muſt be well placed, having been there ſo long,—he who firſt placed it, muſt anſwer for it,—if the enemy come, I will do my duty, and I have nothing more to do.

I have often heard ſuch fooliſh diſcourſe in war: it is the language of careleſſneſs, and beings of this kind will often conſtrue the neceſſary circumſpection

Digitized by Google

cumſpection of thoſe of a more active and ſpirited nature, into anxiety and fear.

I know too well from experience, that there are men, who cannot bear to find others of an inferior rank more ſkilful than themſelves, and whoſe favour may owing to this be eaſily loſt. To this however an officer ſhould pay no attention, but report any faults he may perceive with due reſpect, and enjoy the ſatisfaction of having done his duty.

After an officer has attended to theſe rules, he may in the day-time permit his men to alight, but allow, however, no one to move from his horſe, and far leſs, ſuffer him to unbridle.

The horſes muſt be tied to ſtakes or hedges with halters, in order that the men may mount them in an inſtant, and be ready on the approach of the enemy.

At the hours of feeding, the commander of the piquet muſt never permit the whole to be fed at once, but divide his grand guard into two diviſions, one of which muſt not feed before the other has done. If the enemy be in ſight, and very near, one rank muſt remain on horſeback, whilſt the other feeds.

If there be no water near for the horſes, and you are ſo far from a village, that the peaſants

Digitized by Google

cannot bring it, you muſt not allow more than two men at a time to lead their horſes to water.

When the officer perceives the enemy approaching, he muſt immediately order his men to mount, and haſten to ſome place, where he can beſt obſerve his motions; if he find him ſtrong, he muſt ſend a report to his commander of all that he has ſeen; he ſhould chooſe the moſt truſty and experienced men of his piquet to carry the intelligence, which ſhould be expreſſed as clearly as poſſible: he muſt not only mention that the enemy is approaching, but ſhould acquaint his commander, whether he be cavalry or infantry, or both; how ſtrong he may think him, and whether he has artillery. If an officer has paid attention to the marching of troops, and has practiſed his eye in making remarks upon their number at a diſtance, by particular objects, he muſt be enabled to give a ſatisfactory report: for example, infantry are eaſily diſtinguiſhed from cavalry, at the greateſt diſtance, by the ſhining or glittering of their arms. The greater or leſs quantity of duſt will ſhew whether they are infantry or cavalry, and whether the enemy be marching in columns. In the night-time, if you place your ear upon the ground, you may judge by the noiſe, though a league diſtant, even ſhould the enemy march ever

Digitized by Google

ever ſo quietly, whether he is moving on with cavalry or artillery.

If the grand guard be ſo near the enemy, that his and your videttes are cloſe to each other, and it be probable that the enemy will move from his camp, an officer cannot be too attentive, to report it immediately to his ſuperiors. Under ſuch a circumſtance, he muſt remain continually with his videttes in the night-time, that he may ſee and hear every thing himſelf. It is a certain ſign that the enemy will leave his camp, when the piquet and camp fires give a greater light, or appear more numerous than uſual; and one may foreſee when the enemy is likely to break up his camp, by the noiſe of the ſervants packing up the baggage. An officer muſt report all ſuch particulars to his commander, and avoid falling into the error of that officer, who being poſted on the bank of a river, ſuffered the enemy, encamped on the oppoſite bank, to march off by twilight uninterrupted, without reporting a ſingle word about it; when on the contrary, had he reported the circumſtance as he ought, a conſiderable loſs would have been prevented. General Waſhington would not perhaps have ſo eaſily ſucceeded on the 3d of January, 1777, in eſcaping the ſnares, into which he had fallen, if the officer who was poſted over againſt his camp on Trentown Creek, had paid proper attention

Digitized by Google

the ſudden alteration in the enemy's fires, which were at firſt large, and at once became ſmall. General Waſhington in this caſe would not certainly have been able to execute his *coup de main* upon Prince Town, in the rear of Lord Cornwallis's army.

If the enemy approach in the day-time, and the ſkirmiſhers come ſo near that the officer of the grand guard be forced to retreat, he muſt retire in cloſe order, and leave his videttes, whom he ſhould have previouſly inſtructed, to act as flankers, and to ſkirmiſh with the enemy during his retreat. The officer ought to be particularly attentive to the motions of the enemy during the ſkirmiſh, and take great care that none of his party ſteal by in his rear, and cut him off.

As ſoon as night approaches, the officer muſt mount with his piquet, and allow no dragoon to alight, except on the greateſt neceſſity. If his men murmur, which will ſometimes happen, under the preſſure of ſevere hardſhips, he muſt not be influenced by it, but puniſh it, and threaten to ſhoot thoſe ſoldiers who complain the loudeſt: for though a ſoldier complain of the ſeverity of his officer, when the hardſhips are greateſt, the officer may nevertheleſs be aſſured, that the good and brave ſoldier knows well how to diſtinguiſh the good officer from the careleſs and inactive, and a ſoldier will be as ready to approve

Digitized by Google

approve the conduct of a ſkilful and active officer, when he finds his ſeverity was neceſſary, as to murmur againſt exceſſive hardſhips.

The officer of a grand guard ſhould in the night-time ſend frequent patroles towards the enemy, often viſit his videttes himſelf, and order the non-commiſſioned officer to viſit them alſo, in order that he may be aſſured of their vigilance. The videttes ſhould never remain inactive in the night, but ſhould be alternately riding towards each other, in order that no enemy's party may ſteal through between them. Every relief muſt patrole round the poſts to the diſtance of 500 paces in front, obſerving not to return to the grand guard the ſame way they came.

If an officer hear a ſhot from one of his videttes, he muſt ſend to him immediately a non-commiſſioned officer and two well mounted men, in order that he may immediately learn wherefore the vidette has fired. If the vidette make a miſtake, the officer ſhould reprimand him, but by no means puniſh him, nor become paſſionate for the falſe alarm, for it is always better that a vidette ſhould give a falſe alarm, than announce the approach of the enemy too late.

If the videttes after having fired come full gallop, and announce the enemy, the officer muſt hazard a non-commiſſioned officer and ſome dragoons, and ſend them with the ſame videttes

Digitized by Google

dettes towards that quarter, in order to aſcertain whether the enemy be really approaching. This non-commiſſioner ſhould have inſtructions, not to retreat direct upon the grand guard, ſhould the enemy preſs cloſe upon him, but incline to the right or left, keeping up a continual fire with piſtols or carbines. The officer muſt likewiſe retreat firing, if cloſely purſued by the enemy, towards one of the wings of the corps from which he has been detached, in order not to obſtruct its motions: during this, he muſt ſend off by a dragoon frequent reports of every circumſtance to his commander.

But ſhould the enemy attack or ſucceed in ſurpriſing in the night-time the rear of the corps, from which the grand guard has been detached, and the enemy has not obſerved the neceſſary precautions againſt the grand guard; in ſuch a caſe, the officer, if cool and collected, may with 20 or 30 cavalry turn the fate of the day in his favour. He ſhould form his men in cloſe order, and fall upon one of the flanks of the enemy with a loud ſhout, who, already in diſorder by their attack or ſurpriſe, and not knowing the ſtrength of the piquet which thus falls upon them unawares, will be panick-ſtruck. In this caſe, the grand guard ſhould be previouſly ordered to give no quarter. If an officer be fully determined to conquer or die, ſuch a deſperate

Digitized by Google

deſperate *coup de main* may be a favourable reſource, and eſtabliſh his reputation.

SECTION II.

Of the Advance Guard.

The officer of the advance guard of a corps or detachment of cavalry, cannot be too cautious during a march. In order to be aware of the enemy in time, he muſt order a non-commiſſioned officer with a few dragoons to ride to the diſtance of ſome hundred paces in front, and, according to his ſtrength, an adequate number of men to the ſame diſtance from both his flanks, who ſhould continually keep on the look-out. Suppoſing the advance guard to conſiſt of 30 dragoons: a truſty non-commiſſioned officer with 8 men may ſerve as an advance guard to the officer, two of theſe ſhould ride to the diſtance of 100 or 200 paces in front of the non-commiſſioned officer, two more on his right, and two on his left hand, to the ſame diſtance; the other remaining two with the non-commiſſioned officer.

The officer muſt ſend on his right, 4 dragoons, who ſhould have with them a truſty lance corporal,

Digitized by Google

poral, to the above-mentioned diſtance, and on his left, 4 more. Theſe flankers muſt not paſs any height in the neighbourhood without riding up, in order to obſerve the country, and ſearch thoroughly every covered place; for upon them depends entirely the ſafety of the march. They muſt never neglect to report what they diſcover, to the officer, who ſhould immediately forward ſuch intelligence. In this caſe, that no time may be loſt for the conveyance of information, he ought to keep ſight of his flankers: he muſt alſo order theſe flankers to queſtion every perſon whom they meet reſpecting the enemy, and bring ſuch of them to him, as are intereſting in their reports, or who appear ſuſpicious.

If a defilé or village muſt be paſſed, ſome dragoons ſhould file through it, keeping at the diſtance of ſome hundred paces, or at leaſt, in ſight of each other. The officer muſt form up with his party near the entrance of the defilé or village, and not enter it, until he is aſſured, that no party of the enemy be concealed on the other ſide. Before you enter a village, enquiry muſt always be made about the enemy at the neareſt houſes.

If on your route you find one or more croſs roads branching off, they muſt be thoroughly ſearched by the flankers, and the ſituation of theſe roads be reported to the commander, in order

Digitized by Google

order that he may himſelf order them to be maſked; for in woody and hilly countries one cannot be too cautious, for fear of inadvertently running foul of the enemy.

For inſtance, Colonel Dundas, who commanded at Glouceſter, a ſhort time before the ſiege of York, was ordered by Lord Cornwallis to go out a foraging as far as he poſſibly could into the country. I had the advance guard, which conſiſted of 100 cavalry and 60 yagers and rangers. Having heard nothing of the enemy on the march, I ſuſpected that the officer of the advance guard muſt have been ſomewhat negligent in his ſearch and enquiry at the plantations; I therefore took a dragoon with me, and rode to a plantation myſelf, which lay about 1000 paces on the right of the road, but to which the enemy might have come undiſcovered through the woods. As the Duke of Lauzun was with his legion only 17 or 18 miles from Glouceſter, I expected to hear ſomething of his patroles: I deſired the officer during this time to ride gently; but I had no ſooner arrived at the plantation, and called out the owner, (who was a very diſaffected man towards our cauſe) than I diſcovered five or ſix French huſſars, who were ſeparated from me by a hedge, and fortunately for me did not know the environs of the houſe as well as myſelf. I galloped back, and reported

Digitized by Google

reported this occurrence to Colonel Dundas, who immediately halted, and did not think proper to forage any farther. We had hardly make up our truſſes, when the duke appeared with a ſtrong detachment of Virginian militia; there began a ſharp ſkirmiſh, and we found no little difficulty in making good our retreat. Had I not ſuſpected the officer's negligence in time, and ridden to the plantation myſelf, Colonel Dundas would have proceeded farther, and as the enemy was far ſuperior in number, we muſt have been routed, and the probable conſequence would have been, that the duke would have entered Glouceſter pell-mell with us, or the greateſt part of our cavalry have fallen into his hands.

When the officer of the advance guard has diſcovered the enemy, and made his report in conſequence, he muſt, as ſoon as the enemy draws near, begin to ſkirmiſh with him, and may in this caſe, if he be aſſured of ſupport, ſend his whole party en tirailleur, and endeavour to check his progreſs, to diſcover his ſtrength, and cover the advancing reinforcement until farther orders.

In the night-time the officer of the advance guard muſt liſten attentively himſelf, as his flankers cannot at that time advance to a great diſtance, and ſhould he meet with the enemy, there

Digitized by Google

there is no other reſource, than to fall upon him reſolutely, in order to embarraſs him, and give time to the main body to advance or retreat.

SECTION III.

Of Lateral Patroles.

HAVING already mentioned general rules for lateral patroles in the preceding chapter, I will here only take notice of ſome few particulars; general rules for patroles of cavalry and light infantry being the ſame.

An officer of light cavalry, when detached to cover either flank of a light corps on the march, muſt uſe his utmoſt diligence, and every poſſible circumſpection, that the enemy do not fall upon the corps unawares.

In this caſe, the officer will do beſt to divide his detachment into three parties, keeping one with him in cloſe order, to be ready to charge the enemy ſhould he approach. He ſhould ſend another party with a non-commiſſioned officer to the diſtance of ſome hundred paces in front of him, which ſhould ſpread out by parties of two's, ſearch every covered place, and report to the officer whatever they may obſerve of the enemy.

The

Digitized by Google

The third party he muſt ſend back with a non-commiſſioned officer to the diſtance of ſome hundred paces towards that flank which he is to cover: theſe muſt alſo march two and two ſlowly and acroſs through every covered place, and gallop to every neighbouring height, in order to look round. Should theſe diſcover the enemy, they muſt fire, and if he be advancing in conſiderable force, they muſt not retreat to the corps or detachment, but to the advance or rear guard, by which means the enemy may be deceived, and give an opportunity to the commander of the corps to take him in flank and defeat him.

Thus the lateral patroles covering the ſpace of a quarter of a league, the corps cannot be taken unawares.

SECTION IV.

How an Officer of Cavalry ought to act on a Patrole.

AS cavalry cannot conceal themſelves ſo readily as light infantry, the officer muſt be the more careful in accompliſhing this commiſſion.

Having taken the neceſſary precautions, which have been already mentioned in advancing, and if

Digitized by Google

if the object be to reconnoitre, whether the enemy ſtill remain on the ſame poſt, or have occupied any particular poſt or paſs, the officer muſt advance with the greateſt circumſpection, and rather too ſlow than too quick. He muſt endeavour in approaching to conceal his ſtrength from the enemy. In ſuch a caſe he will do well, if it be day-time, to form a ſingle rank, and divide it into two parties, at a certain diſtance from each other, and he himſelf ſhould ride with ſome of his beſt mounted men to reconnoitre well, and accompliſh his orders; having ſucceeded, he muſt return as quick as poſſible.

If this duty muſt be performed in the night-time, he has certainly this advantage on his ſide, that the enemy cannot diſcover him at a diſtance; but he muſt alſo be ſo much the more careful againſt ambuſcades, and double his precautions, when he comes into the neighbourhood of the enemy. He muſt order his party to halt at the diſtance of 600 or 800 paces from the enemy's poſt, and ſend a truſty non-commiſſioned officer with one or two well mounted dragoons towards the ſentries, who, as ſoon as they are challenged and fired upon by the enemy, muſt retire ſilently: ſhould the enemy have abandoned their poſt, the non-commiſſioned officer muſt halt on the ſpot, and ſend back a dragoon to report the circumſtance; upon which the officer ſhould ad-

Digitized by Google

vance and aſcertain the fact himſelf. Should the poſt be near a village, he ſhould enquire from the inhabitants whether the enemy have marched off, and where. He ſhould take back with him ſuch of the inhabitants as have given the moſt ſatisfactory anſwers, in order to ſerve as guides, ſhould it be neceſſary to purſue the enemy; he muſt however previouſly ſend off one of his beſt mounted dragoons to report the retreat of the enemy to head quarters. For example, in the ſpring of 1777, when General Waſhington collected his army near Morriſtown, in the province of New Jerſey, I was ſent out by Lord Cornwallis to ſee whether the enemy had occupied the defilé of Boundbruck, for which purpoſe an officer with 20 dragoons of the 16th regiment was given me. As I had to paſs a defilé on my march, I took a truſty non-commiſſioned officer with 10 yagers to me, which, in order to cover my retreat, I left at the defilé: I knew this country extremely well, having been there with the out-poſt ſince the 4th of January, and had ſkirmiſhed with the enemy between this poſt and Boundbruck; I arrived behind the plantation by a round-about road, where the enemy had occupied a night-poſt the whole winter, I found the enemy had left this country, and advanced within half a league of Boundbruck; as I had yet another plantation to paſs, which

Digitized by Google

which belonged to a violent rebel, I ſent two dragoons to fetch him ; I had hardly ſpoken to him, than I received a fire in front, from about 20 or 30 Americans who were in the orchard of this plantation ; I galloped back inſtantly, and had to go through another volley from as many more, who had cut off my retreat; but favoured by an uncommonly dark night, I reached the defilé without loſing a man, and without any other misfortune but a fall from my horſe, and being trodden upon by the Engliſh dragoons, by which my leg was ſeverely hurt.

This example ſhews, that I had not obſerved the neceſſary precaution, and had thought myſelf too ſecure, becauſe I did not find the enemy's night piquet, and therefore concluded that the enemy had marched off. I ſhould have done better, had I ordered the owner of the plantation to have been brought to me when at a greater diſtance; in this caſe, I ſhould not have hazarded ſome 20 men, which might have been loſt, had not good luck extricated us.

If a patroling officer find that the enemy be marching with a ſtrong corps, or with his whole force, he muſt endeavour to conceal himſelf, ſo that he may obſerve the approach of the enemy, but in which taſk, he muſt be particularly careful to avoid being cut off; as ſoon as he is aſſured of the enemy's approach, he ſhould ſend

Digitized by Google

two of his beſt mounted men, in order that ſhould one meet with a misfortune on the road, the other may eſcape, and convey the intelligence to the commander. If the enemy halt on his march, the officer muſt do the ſame at a proper diſtance; for it may be poſſible that the enemy have advanced merely to cover a large foraging; if the officer aſcertain this, he muſt immediately acquaint his commander with it.

But ſhould the officer in this caſe, notwithſtanding every precaution, meet with the enemy unawares in an interſected country, as it may happen in woody countries in a croſs road, he muſt endeavour to force his way through; a few men may eſcape and report the circumſtance. I have ſeen two inſtances of this kind during the American war, both of which daring attempts ſucceeded. One was in the campaign of 1777, in Penſylvania, where a French officer with 20 or 30 American dragoons on their march, in the country of Swedensfurth, forced through between the advance guard and the Engliſh army, and though expoſed to the heavy fire of ſome hundred men from the advance guard and the lateral patroles, he however loſt nothing more than his hat.

The other was in the campaign of 1781, in Virginia, when a non-commiſſioned officer and ſix dragoons of Armand's corps, not far from Diſcant

Digitized by Google

Diſcant Bridge, forced through between a piquet of the Queen's Rangers and a corps that were juſt then encamping. One may ſee by both theſe examples, that fortune always favours bravery, and frequently raſhneſs.

When intelligence of the enemy is wanted, an officer is ſometimes ſent out to make priſoners; in this caſe, he muſt have recourſe either to force or artifice, and ſhould he meet no party of the enemy on his route whom he can decoy by a falſe retreat, he muſt endeavour to approach as near as poſſible to the enemy's videttes or ſentries undiſcovered, gallop with ſome dragoons upon them, and try to carry one off. Whether he ſucceed or not, his retreat muſt be quick.

The French Colonel Armand, who commanded a light corps in the American army, ſucceeded in ſuch an enterprize, near Courland's houſe, in the province of New York. He galloped about noon upon a piquet of Heſſian and Anſpach's yager corps, made two priſoners, and though immediately purſued, came away without loſs.

The French Major Norman ſucceeded in an attempt of this kind, againſt a piquet of the Engliſh light infantry near Portſmouth, in Virginia, where he galloped at mid-day upon the ſentries, and without firing a ſhot, made the greateſt part of the piquet priſoners.

Theſe enterprizes are often more ſucceſsful in the day-time, eſpecially in the middle of ſummer

Digitized by Google

about noon, as the men are then tired by watching the whole night, and generally think that leſs vigilance is required, and are conſequently more negligent; they may be alſo attempted with ſucceſs in the night-time. Some reſolute dragoons may be ordered to approach the enemy's ſentries, and if diſcovered, muſt give themſelves out for deſerters, and carry off the ſentries, if they be credulous enough to believe them. If this ſhould ſucceed without the enemy's piquet having perceived it, one may ride confidently to the piquet, fall abruptly upon them, cut them to pieces, or make them priſoners.

If an officer on his patrole meet with an enemy's detachment, I adviſe him by all means to proceed cautiouſly, and not to follow them, as they have been moſt probably ſent out to decoy him into an ambuſcade.

SECTION V.

Of the Duty of an Officer of Light Cavalry on Rear Guard.

The officer of a rear guard muſt endeavour to keep his men in as high ſpirits as poſſible, to guard them againſt any ſudden fear, in caſe of emergen-

Digitized by Google

emergencies; for the flight of a rear guard upon the main body muſt create confuſion, and as the main body can eaſily ſupport him, the danger can never be very great. If the enemy follow him, he will do beſt to divide his party into two diviſions, one of which he forms in cloſe order, and employs the other to ſkirmiſh; theſe muſt always remain two and two for mutual ſupport, and muſt follow (keeping up a continual fire of piſtols or carbines) at the diſtance of 100 or 150 paces, or even 300, according as they are more or leſs preſſed upon by the enemy's flankers. Flankers muſt always have the piſtol in the hand, and the ſabre hanging on the wriſt.

If the enemy purſue ſlowly, the firing muſt be alſo ſlow; if the piquet be cloſely preſſed, the fire of the flankers muſt be the briſker; by this, the commander will be able to judge and act accordingly.

Should a number of flankers of the enemy be too daring, and hazard too far, the officer muſt charge them, and that expeditiouſly, for fear of being cut off: I had once myſelf a narrow eſcape of this kind.

I had the rear guard of the yagers corps on the retreat through the Jerſeys in the campaign of 1778, when the Engliſh army were retiring from Allentown: my rear guard conſiſted of 100 men, about 30 yagers, and 20 mounted riflemen,

Digitized by Google

under the command of the brave Lieutenant Mertz, in whom I had the greateſt confidence. I poſted him with ſome yagers behind the huts of the camp, which the Engliſh light infantry had occupied, in order to decoy ſome of the enemy's tirailleurs into an ambuſcade. Count Pulawſky commanded the advance guard of Waſhington's army, a man who had great military knowledge, and truly brave, but whom however I was particularly anxious to enſnare. Theſe huts ſtood in a ſmall plain of 800 or 1000 paces ſquare, ſurrounded with gently riſing heights covered with wood. The Virginian riflemen, who are very daring, appeared firſt, and as theſe men are very poor and eager for booty, I expected they would be tempted to ſearch the abandoned huts; but I was deceived, for they were too cunning, and remained on the ſummit of the woody height, until Pulawſky appeared on a ſudden with his cavalry. Colonel Wurmb, who commanded the whole rear of the army, and who diſapproved of my long ſtay in the valley, ſent orders for me to retire inſtantly, the whole army being too far off already; I obeyed. Pulawſky was aſtoniſhed at the men who made their appearance from behind the huts; fortunately for me, the enemy loſt the favourable moment of taking ſome 50 men with the greateſt eaſe, whilſt I was paſſing a defilé in my rear, which

Digitized by Google

which I found on my march out of the plain, and which defilé I was unacquainted with, as indeed with the whole country. I had ſome difficulty in attaining it, and the enemy, after having received ſome few well-aimed ſhots from the riflemen, gave up the purſuit.

This ſhews that an officer who is with the rear, ſhould not be too raſh, as any little advantage which he may obtain over the enemy in ſuch circumſtances, is likely to animate him to hazard more, and the ſmalleſt diſadvantage he may afterwards experience, may diſcourage the main body on his retreat.

CHAP-

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER V.

OF THE DUTY OF A LIGHT CORPS.

SECTION I.

Of the Duty of a Light Corps when marching againſt the Enemy.

I WILL now take notice of the duty of a light corps in the field, and point out how it muſt be led againſt the enemy under every circumſtance. A commander who has raiſed and diſciplined his corps by the foregoing rules, can proceed with confidence. He can depend upon the courage and fidelity of his men, if he have placed at their head, officers who unite zeal, patience, and bravery with good conduct.

The march of a light corps has various deſtinations. It may be ſent out to occupy a poſt expeditiouſly; to cover a certain tract againſt the enemy; to eſtabliſh the communication of two armies, or ſecure convoys againſt the inroads of the enemy; to carry off thoſe of the enemy,

Digitized by Google

enemy, or to annoy him in the execution of his plans; to fall upon his flanks, and endeavour to retard his march; to trace the detachments of the enemy, who have been ſent out for the ſame purpoſe; to fall upon and diſperſe them; to lay ambuſcades to decoy an enemy's corps, or to raiſe contributions and take hoſtages.

The performance of theſe different duties will lead to enterprizes of the greateſt importance, ſubject to many difficulties, and of which the ſucceſs requires much artifice, reſolution, preſence of mind, and an accurate knowledge of the country. We ſhould weigh in our minds every event that may probably happen, and by great reflection, obtain a thorough judgment and ſkill in this part of the art of war, which will enable us to diſcover the beſt poſſible means of deceiving the enemy.

One cannot accurately lay down all the rules for the various objects that may happen upon a march, for circumſtances may occur, which were perhaps never before obſerved in any war.

The commander of a corps of this deſcription may, if he poſſeſs the ability and ſkill which are neceſſary to the ſucceſs of theſe undertakings, acquire a never-fading reputation: but on the contrary, when he thinks he has done every thing in his power, ſhould he for a moment loſe ſight of the neceſſary precaution, by being too much

Digitized by Google

much elated with paſt ſucceſs, he may loſe at once his reputation, and the confidence of the commanding general for ever.

There is no profeſſion more thankleſs than that of a partiſan, however well this word may ſound in the ear of a young officer; for though an officer may have ſerved as ſuch during ten campaigns with the greateſt eclat, and ſhould be unfortunate in the eleventh, his hard-earned fame is at once blaſted and forgotten. For inſtance, Colonel Rall, who by his ſkill and acknowledged bravery had in the ſeven years war gained the confidence of ſeveral generals of the allied army, loſt by one act of negligence, his reputation and his life at Trenton, and that merely owing to his contempt of the enemy.

In this kind of warfare, ſecrecy is the greateſt virtue, and never more than two in the corps, whoſe judgment, preſence of mind, information, and courage may be depended upon, ſhould be acquainted with the object of the undertaking. But, however neceſſary ſecrecy may be, one at leaſt muſt be intruſted with the object of the expedition, for otherwiſe, ſhould the commanding officer be ſeverely wounded or killed, the deſign would of courſe be at an end.

As every one has not an opportunity of travelling, they muſt be content with the information they can acquire by maps, and by queſtioning

Digitized by Google

ing the inhabitants reſpecting the ſituation of the country which may be the ſeat of war. In order to obtain this, they ſhould endeavour to procure good guides for their march; and if ſo fortunate in their choice as to meet with thoſe who are well acquainted with the country, but cannot be truſted, non-commiſſioned officers ſhould be ordered to accompany them as a guard; but ſuch guides muſt be treated in a friendly manner, liberally entertained, and if poor, well paid, particularly when diſmiſſed. By giving theſe men a glaſs of wine, a good meal, and a little money, you may acquire the good name and confidence of a whole diſtrict. I have often been neceſſitated in the American war to ſeize upon guides by force; for there was not a ſingle perſon to be found in the whole country, well diſpoſed to the Britiſh army; but a good word, liberal treatment, and a few dollars, often cauſed the moſt diſaffected man to become my friend, and in the end highly valuable: by ſuch treatment you may rely upon it, that in every country there are men who will aſſiſt, and ſeldom betray you.

The greateſt ſecurity of a light corps upon a march depends upon the precaution and order, with which it is led. The commander muſt, above all things, obſerve that every officer rides before his platoon, which ſhould march in the greateſt

Digitized by Google

greateſt order, and ſhould ſuffer no one except upon very preſſing emergencies to fall out of the ranks. If this cannot be avoided, a non-commiſſioned officer muſt remain to ſee him back to his platoon. But the men ſhould be accuſtomed to this, when firſt formed or in peaceable times, for nothing has a more awkward appearance than to ſee officers when changing quarters, or when marching to manœuvre, riding in parties in front and rear of the regiment, and the diviſions intermixed. If the men are accuſtomed to this in time of peace, they would not even think of doing otherwiſe in war.

How did the Pruſſians gain their advantage over a ſuperior force? By their good diſcipline, order, and ſkill in manœuvring, to which they were accuſtomed during peace; the battle of Zorndorf is an evident proof of this, in which the Pruſſians, during the hotteſt of the action, preſerved a certain order, whilſt the Ruſſians fought *ſans enſemble.*

Upon a ſecret expedition, all ſervants and valets of the army ought to be placed under the command of an officer, and their place aſſigned upon the march between the corps and the rear guard; for as they commonly ride about, to ſearch for proviſions for themſelves and their maſters, one of them may be taken by the enemy, and betray the approach of the corps. The greateſt

Digitized by Google

greateſt irregularities frequently happen in villages, owing to this claſs of men, by which the corps are deteſted by the inhabitants, and the whole blame falls upon the commander.

As ſoon as we ſuſpect the leaſt danger from the enemy, an advance guard of 20 or 30 cavalry ſhould be formed, beſides a lateral patrole of the ſame force on each flank; their ſkirmiſhers muſt ſearch the country around for a quarter of a league, in order to receive timely intelligence of every thing that may approach: I have mentioned above, how an officer muſt act in theſe circumſtances.

The advance guard of cavalry muſt be followed by an officer, with the ſame number of riflemen, in order to ſupport him; theſe on the enemy's approach muſt extend two or three together, and endeavour to do execution upon the enemy's flankers, through the intervals of their own, who, if preſſed too hard upon and forced to give way, the yagers muſt lay hold of their ſtirrups, and by this means ſecure their retreat. If yagers be once practiſed to this manœuvre, it would ſeldom happen, that any would be loſt; for light infantry that cannot fight mixed with cavalry is of little uſe. Huſſars, or any other light cavalry, if they knew what advantage they may derive from ſuch aſſiſtance, would exert themſelves to favour their retreat.

We

Digitized by Google

We muſt not purſue, however, the method which a certain m—— did upon a manœuvre, who inſtead of placing a yager's company behind the advance guard, placed it behind the whole column of cavalry, as he could not conceive how the yagers could extricate themſelves through the cavalry that was behind him, without being trodden under foot by the horſes.

If the country be open on the march, the cavalry muſt follow the advance guard of thoſe riflemen, which are followed by the two companies of riflemen and light infantry; an officer having 20 cavalry, brings up the rear guard, whoſe duty it is to obſerve, that neither ſoldier or ſervant remain behind.

Croſs roads muſt be maſked by a platoon of riflemen or light infantry, who there form up until the rear guard has paſſed, or that they are ſucceſſively relieved by the following diviſions.

The commander of a light corps cannot be too ſtrict in his orders to the officers or non-commiſſioned officers, who lead the advance guard and lateral patroles, that they direct their flankers to extend as far as poſſible (though not out of ſight of each other) in front and on the ſide where the enemy is expected: to queſtion and ſtop all people whom they meet, and ſend them to the commander of the corps, in order that they may not fall into a ſnare, which might coſt

Digitized by Google

coſt many men, and occaſion very ſerious conſequences. If the American officer on the day of the battle of Brandywine River had been ſupported in his ambuſcade by ſome hundred cavalry, theſe, by a charge upon the head of General Knyphauſen's column, when the Britiſh Rangers were already in confuſion, might have done ſuch execution, as to have fruſtrated the whole plan of General Howe, or at leaſt, by ſuch a momentary advantage have animated the Americans to a more obſtinate reſiſtance.

If there be on the march a hollow way, or a river, over which there is a bridge to be paſſed, the detachment of riflemen that belong to the advance guard, muſt file on both ſides of the bridge or defilé, and occupy the banks of the former, or the heights of the latter. The advance guard of cavalry may then paſs, and muſt ſearch the country far in front, and on both ſides for half a league, in order to obtain information of the enemy from the neighbouring inhabitants, during which time the corps form up on both ſides of the iſſue of the defilé or bridge. The officer of the advance guard takes poſt as ſoon as he has ordered his flankers to ſearch the country about one-eighth of a league diſtant from the iſſue of the defilé or bridge, reports to the commander of the corps what may occur,

Digitized by Google

and proceeds upon his march in the before-mentioned order.

By this means, intelligence of the enemy may be eaſily acquired, ſhould any of his detachments be ſituated in the neighbourhood of the poſt, and obtain ſufficient time to reſolve, whether to attack the enemy, maintain the poſt, or retire.

If an enemy's detachment have occupied ſuch a poſt, and there are orders to take it by force, or to fight the enemy wherever found; no time ſhould be loſt, eſpecially if it be a defilé, to charge the enemy reſolutely with the light infantry, during which, both the rifle companies muſt endeavour to take the enemy in flank, and if poſſible, in the rear.

If the poſt be a ſtone bridge, which the enemy have not been able to demoliſh, the riflemen muſt endeavour to amuſe him along the banks of the river, whilſt the cavalry attempt to paſs over or under the bridge, and if the enemy cannot hinder it, he muſt retire. In both theſe inſtances, the cavalry muſt be ſent after him, the light infantry follow, and try as much as poſſible to annoy him upon the road.

For example; General Arnold on his march from Smithſtown to Portſmouth in Virginia, perceived that the enemy had occupied the bridge near M'Key's Mill, which lay on the right bank

Digitized by Google

bank of the River Payan, with ſome hundred ſharp-ſhooters and a field piece, in order to ſecure this paſs, or at leaſt to force General Arnold to take a great round through a country where there were no roads. Colonel Simcoe was ſent off with his cavalry to reconnoitre this poſt. He was hardly on the road, before he ſent back an officer to the general with the intelligence that the enemy intended to defend it. General Arnold ordered me to haſten there with 50 riflemen and 3 companies of rangers with all poſſible ſpeed. We arrived in the afternoon on this ſide of the River Payan, and found that the enemy had occupied not only the mill, but the garden, which lay upon a hill on the right. As there was a plantation on this ſide of the mill, near which ſtood an orchard, I occupied the latter with my party, and directed a well-aimed fire upon thoſe of the enemy who held the garden near the mill. During this time Colonel Simcoe attempted to ford the river a ſhort half league below the mill. The enemy perceiving this, quitted the poſt; I purſued him immediately with the yagers and a ranger's company over the ruins of the bridge; upon which Colonel Simcoe haſtened on the Suffolk road towards me, and the enemy's detachment was almoſt deſtroyed.

If the defilé be ſo ſituated, that one cannot go

Digitized by Google

round it, or the bridge be of ſtone, which the enemy cannot demoliſh, and he have occupied the defilé or both banks of the river, divide the ſharp-ſhooters (if you be forced to attack the enemy) into two parties, and order them to keep up a continual fire upon him from both ſides of the defilé or the bridge; you may alſo, in caſe of neceſſity, order the mounted riflemen to alight, whilſt you attack the bridge with the light infantry.

In caſe of ſucceſs, and the enemy be driven back, the cavalry muſt follow immediately, in order to hinder him from making head again. If the enemy by this means ſhould be overcome, the favourable moment muſt be well employed, and preſs on him ſo cloſely, that he will not hazard another attack for ſome time.

Should the march be through hilly countries, the ſharp-ſhooters ſhould occupy the hills on both ſides, in order to cover the corps. Every company muſt in this caſe be divided into 8 or 10 ſections, all of whom muſt have their flankers, that they may cover and ſearch a greater tract. Theſe ſhould have good guides to direct them through the foot paths, which lead out of the main road, in order that they may be ſearched to the diſtance of a quarter of a league, ſo that no party of the enemy may ſteal by, and fall upon

Digitized by Google

upon the corps unawares in the flank or in the rear.

If the roads in the hills be ſo narrow that you cannot march by platoons or ſections, and are forced to file to the right or left, the heights muſt be ſo much the more ſtrongly occupied, in order to march with ſafety. In this caſe, the advance and rear guards muſt conſiſt of light infantry, and the cavalry follow behind both companies of light infantry; a truſty non-commiſſioned officer with ſome light dragoons may however be ſent with the advance and rear guards, who, ſhould any thing happen, will be ready to report the circumſtance immediately to the commander.

If the country be woody, the riflemen muſt cover the advance and rear guards and both flanks, divide into ſections, as in hilly countries, and ſearch the coverts a quarter of a league ſtraight forwards, as well as on both ſides. Theſe ſections, upon which the ſafety of the corps depends, muſt not remain behind each other in countries where they cannot ſee far around them, but muſt out-wing each other towards the enemy.

By this means a company can ſearch a diſtrict of half a league wide, and if attacked, one ſection covers the other. In the ſame manner, the two light infantry companies muſt march into

Digitized by Google

the wood on both ſides, and the cavalry proceed between them upon the road.

When marching in the night, which is the beſt time for ſecret expeditions, it is well to double the advance guard, in order that they may fall upon the enemy with more effect, for flankers cannot go far out in the night-time to look around. To judge how an officer ſhould act in this caſe, I refer the reader to the foregoing ſections.

Should an officer ſtumble upon the enemy with his advance guard, he muſt form up with the whole immediately, on both ſides the road; if in a plain, the cavalry ſhould be placed upon the flanks of the light infantry, and the riflemen drawn up behind the cavalry; for as the enemy in ſuch an occurrence will be equally embarraſſed, there will be nothing to fear. In this caſe, ſome ſcouts of two or three men may be ſent towards the enemy, who, creeping upon their hands and knees, approach his front and flanks unobſerved, and thereby form an idea of his ſtrength: from their report and his inſtructions, the officer will be able to judge whether he muſt wait until day-break, or retreat.

An officer may alſo be ſent out to procure intelligence of the approach of the enemy, in which caſe, as it generally takes place in the night, I would recommend him to proceed ſtill more cau-

Digitized by Google

cautiouſly, for it may happen, that he will find him where he leaſt expected him. For example. In the year 1781, when the French and American army had encamped upon the heights of White Plain, and had advanced their out-poſts as far as Top's Ferry; on the 21ſt of July, General Clinton having an intention to forage the whole country between the Sawmill and Hudſon's River as far as Philip's and Valentine's Heights, in order to be beforehand with the enemy who was approaching, ordered on the evening of the 22d, Lieutenant Colonel Emmrich to go with a detachment up Hudſon's River, and occupy the heights of Top's Ferry; but after midnight, when 2000 waggons with the neceſſary eſcort had already arrived upon York Iſland near the King's Bridge, the general received intelligence that the enemy's army was in motion, upon which he recalled the foragers. Lieutenant Colonel Pruſchenk was inſtantly ordered with 200 yagers and 30 light dragoons to gain the paſs of Philip's Bridge, in order to favour the retreat of Lieutenant Colonel Emmrich, and to cover and ſupport his rear and right flank, ſhould he be attacked. General Waſhington, who had received the preceding day certain intelligence that De Lancy's volunteers were to go a plundering on the next day as uſual, ſent the ſame night a detachment of his beſt troops about Miles's Square, to form

Digitized by Google

an ambuſcade behind the heights that lay between King's Bridge and Moriſine, where De Lancy's corps were quartered, in order to attack and defeat them upon their march; of all which General Clinton had not received the leaſt intelligence. Lieutenant Colonel Pruſchenk had hardly marched a quarter of a league when his flankers, who were fortunately commanded by an excellent officer (Lieutenant Schaffer), diſcovered ſome concealed ſentries of the enemy: the non-commiſſioned officer of the party, a man of extraordinary preſence of mind, and of great courage, ſuppoſing them to belong to De Lancy's corps, wiſhed them "Good morning;" but as they attempted to ſeize him, he perceived his error, and cried aloud, "Rebels are here!" extricated himſelf from their hands, and fired.

Lieutenant Schaffer, who had already advanced farther with the advance guard upon the road of Courtland's plantation, but who marched with every precaution, was likewiſe informed by his flankers, that they thought they ſaw ſome men before them. The officer had hardly called out to them to look attentively before them, as the day was breaking, than they received a fire from the enemy, by which the greater part of them were either killed or wounded. He returned the fire, but finding himſelf ſurrounded by the enemy on all ſides, reſolved to croſs a moraſs which was upon

Digitized by Google

upon the right, and by which he fortunately eſcaped.

Lieutenant Colonel Pruſchenk, who was mean while endeavouring to gain a height, formed up, attacked the enemy reſolutely, and routed him after a treble attack. Colonel Wurmb haſtened to his aſſiſtance with the remaining part of the Heſſian yager's corps; the enemy was driven back beyond Devan's plantation, and the detachment under Lieutenant Colonel Emmrich ſaved. The enemy left upon the field more killed and ſeverely wounded than the whole of the yager detachment, whoſe loſs amounted only to 37 killed and wounded.

Should you be ſent out to cover the rear of another detachment, or to ſupport it, every means ought to be employed to accompliſh the object: the preceding example is worthy of imitation, which alſo proves, that you ſhould never think yourſelf fully ſecure; for had this detachment been ſurpriſed and cut off, it would not only have been loſt, but alſo that under Lieutenant Colonel Emmrich, whoſe fortunate eſcape depended upon it; and the loſs of thoſe detachments would have been irreparable to ſo ſmall an army as General Clinton's at that time was.

Colonel Pruſchenk here acted in the beſt manner poſſible; for, had he loſt his preſence of mind, and delayed, Lieutenant Colonel Emmrich, who

was

Digitized by Google

was already preſſed upon by the enemy, would have been loſt. There are circumſtances in war, when all muſt be hazarded, and at one time meaſures may be undertaken with propriety, which at another would be raſhneſs and foolhardineſs.

As often as you halt or encamp upon a ſecret expedition, you ought to avoid inhabited places, and chooſe the moſt covered countries; obſerving however, that you have water in the neighbourhood. If the bread which you had brought with you be finiſhed, ſend a truſty non-commiſſioned officer, after you have fully examined that you be in ſafety, with choſen men to the neareſt village, in order to raiſe what you may want. Under ſuch circumſtances, order this party to bring back with them the lord of the manor, a municipal officer, a prieſt or foreſter, to procure intelligence from them. If you be in an enemy's country, you may keep any of them with you as long as convenient, ſignifying to the inhabitants, that ſhould you diſcover any treachery, theſe hoſtages will be hanged.

If you find that an enemy's detachment occupy the neighbourhood whence neceſſity compels you to fetch proviſions, and you cannot attack him owing to his ſuperiority, or for other reaſons, you muſt not remain a moment longer than you have received the neceſſary proviſions, but

Digitized by Google

but march a few leagues to one ſide, or even to the rear, and turn again by a round-about way to the road which you are to follow, in order that the inhabitants may not betray you, who in general cannot ſpare much, and therefore will not give willingly. It is beſt to pay ready money for the bread, when you are incritical circumſtances, and only take as much as neceſſity requires.

If ſent out to ſeize an important poſt, to take hoſtages, or to lay in ambuſcade for an enemy's convoy, you muſt avoid an engagement, even if certain of ſucceſs, for fear of loſing your principal object, and acting contrary to your orders.

If you be however forced to engage with an enemy's detachment upon your march, you muſt not be too long in reſolving, make your diſpoſition immediately, and charge him reſolutely, though ſuperior; for it is a general rule in war, that he who begins the attack, has already half the victory, and fortune generally favours the reſolute and brave, and very often indeed the raſh. In caſe the country be flat, fall upon one of the flanks of the enemy with the greater part of your cavalry and light infantry, whilſt the riflemen, ſupported by the other part of the cavalry, will amuſe the other wing of the enemy by a falſe attack: the riflemen muſt endeavour by their deſtructive fire to annoy and weaken the

Digitized by Google

the enemy on all ſides from afar; for ſhould once one of the enemy's wings be thrown into confuſion, and begin to waver, the other wing will ſoon follow the example, and a general route be the conſequence. In caſe the country be interſected with woods or hills, you muſt fall upon the enemy on all ſides by platoons or diviſions, and you may employ your riflemen to great advantage in ſuch countries, where the cavalry or bayonet can be of little or no effect.

On an attack, divide your corps into two parts, and ſend them upon both wings of the enemy. The advance guard of the corps under the Marquis de la Fayette was defeated in this manner near Spencer's Houſe, not far from Williamſburg. In the campaign in Virginia, the army under Lord Cornwallis quitted their camp near Pſaun's Plantation on the 25th of June at ſunſet, and directed their march towards Williamſburg. Colonel Simcoe was to cover the left flank of the Engliſh army, with his corps and the yager detachment, to take his march between the rivers Chikahomming and Diſcant, to carry off the cattle, deſtroy the boats he might find in both rivers, and to burn the tobacco manufactories. Hereupon he divided his corps into two diviſions, with one of which he marched himſelf along the left bank of the Chikahomming, and I remained with the other upon the right bank of the

Digitized by Google

the Diſcant. We were informed upon the firſt and ſecond march by ſome well diſpoſed people, that the enemy was purſuing us: we were indeed upon our guard; but being generally not farther from our army than four or ſix leagues, we laughed at this intelligence, and conſidered it as ſome contrivance they had in view to ſend us out of the neighbourhood as ſoon as poſſible.

Without attending to this, we determined to adhere ſtrictly to our orders, more eſpecially as on the 25th we received intelligence near Burben's Plantation, that Lieutenant Colonel Tarleton had halted the ſame day near Pund's Plantation, a league and a half on my right, with the Britiſh legion, who formed the rear of the army.

I haſtened to Colonel Simcoe over Soan's Bridge, where the Diſcant falls into the Chikahomming; we came through the paſſes of Narwells and both Coopers' Mills, and arrived ſafe on the 26th, at ſeven o'clock in the morning, at Spencer's Plantation, two leagues from Williamſburg, where the army then was, bringing with us 1200 head of horned cattle.

As we had marched the whole night, the Colonel ordered us to reſt ourſelves a few hours in the wood on the ſides of the road. The cattle was driven under a ſmall eſcort before us, and as we thought ourſelves in perfect ſafety, only a few

Digitized by Google

few ſentries were placed. I had the advanced guard with the yagers, one company of grenadiers, and one of light infantry; the battalion of Rangers followed, after theſe the cattle, then the cavalry, and a Scotch company with the colonel brought up the rear.

The country was interſected with wood, moraſſes, and heights. The cavalry was ſent to water by platoons, at a rivulet which wound through a valley on the left, and was not far from the place which the Scotch company had occupied.

The enemy, to whom all the inhabitants were well diſpoſed, and who on the contrary hated us, becauſe we had done them much injury in the execution of our orders as to the diſaffected ſubjects, was arrived ſo near us by a very quick march, (without our having received any intelligence of it), that we had hardly time when the ſentries gave fire, to take up arms.

Fortunately for us, the American Major Macpherſon, who fell upon a part of the cavalry whilſt watering their horſes, attacked ſomewhat too ſoon, and thereby gave the alarm. I ſprang upon my horſe at the firſt ſhots, and haſtened through an orchard that was ſtraight before me, in order to look round; I perceived, at the diſtance of a gun-ſhot, a line of infantry, a part of which inclined to the left, in order to cut us off

Digitized by Google

off from Williamſburg's road: I galloped back again; a French officer purſued me, but was taken priſoner by my orderly dragoon: I cried out, forward! ordered the yagers to incline to the right, that they might fall upon the flanks of the enemy, if it were poſſible, or at leaſt to maintain the road to Williamſburg, and charged the enemy with the companies of grenadiers and light infantry without firing. The Scotch captain, M'Key, did the ſame on the enemy's right; and Captain Schenk, with the few dragoons and huſſars which he had collected together in haſte, fell upon the enemy's cavalry, and routed them. For ten minutes I was at cloſe quarters with the enemy's infantry. Lieutenant Bickel fell upon his left flank, and ſome yagers, who had turned it, fell upon him in the rear; in ſhort, the enemy was driven back, and we eſcaped a ſnare, in which we might have loſt our lives or liberty. We took five officers priſoners, (two of whom were Frenchmen who had ſerved as volunteers, and about 60 men. The enemy loſt many men; and we had three officers and about 50 killed and wounded. The enemy's detachment, which belonged to the Marquis de la Fayette's army, who was preſent himſelf, amounted to 1200 of his beſt men.

This example ſhews that courage and fortune alone ſaved us; for we had in every reſpect neglected

Digitized by Google

neglected the neceſſary precaution, by too much dependence upon the vicinity of our army. At any rate, during our reſt, we ought to have ſent ſmall parties to patrole around, by which means timely intelligence of the enemy's approach would have been received: this was more eſpecially neceſſary in a country like Virginia, which is ſo covered with foreſts, and where all the inhabitants were diſaffected. If Major Macpherſon had not committed the unpardonable fault of attacking too ſoon, the enemy would have had time to have inclined more to the left, by which we ſhould have been cut off from the road to the army, and have been attacked on all ſides.

If the enemy be defeated, you may indeed purſue, but this muſt be done very cautiouſly, and the country and particular circumſtances well conſidered. If you have driven back a very ſuperior force, and you ſuſpect any ſtratagem, it is well to reſt ſatisfied with the firſt advantage. Should you have this advantage over the enemy in hilly or woody countries, you muſt purſue him very cautiouſly, and not too far, for you run a riſk of being cut off. But if the country be open that you can ſee around you, and you find that the enemy cannot be ſupported, you may in ſuch a caſe purſue him until he is completely routed. For inſtance: in the affair at Spencer's Plantation, it would have been blameable

Digitized by Google

able had Colonel Simcoe followed the enemy; for our commiſſion was fulfilled, and it was our duty to join the army again as ſoon as poſſible: Beſides this, he would have run the riſk of their being the advance guard of the enemy's army, which was following, (as was really the caſe) and would ſoon have ſupported them.

In order to find out and drive back the enemy's detachments, which may have rendered the country unſafe by their inroads, divide your corps into two or three parts, each of which ought to take a different rout, that ſhould one of them be attacked, the remainder may be ready for a ſupport. By this diſpoſition, you gain the advantage, that if the middle corps be fallen upon, the two others may attack the enemy's flank and rear. For inſtance: in the winter of 1778, when the Engliſh army lay in Philadelphia, Colonel Wurmb frequently went out towards the enemy, who wintered at Valee's Forge, in order to cover the market people and tradeſmen who furniſhed the army in Philadelphia with proviſions. He generally divided his corps into three parts, one of which took the main road towards Lancaſter, the ſecond marched along Marſchal's road, and the third took the great road down the Delaware, leading to Derby. As theſe roads ran parallel, and only one or one and a half league from each other, the thickets

Digitized by Google

and other covered places; which were between the three roads, could be ſo well ſearched by the lateral patroles, that no party of the enemy could be concealed here; each diviſion had his appointed poſt, to halt, to lay in ambuſcade for a certain time, with orders to ſupport that party, which might happen to be attacked. General Morgan, who commanded a corps of rifle-men and Indians, had frequently received orders from General Waſhington, to lay himſelf in ambuſcade, in order to cut off one of our parties, or employ every means to attack and defeat it; but by reaſon of the very ſkilful marching order of Colonel Wurmb, this bold man never hazarded more than to ſhew himſelf at a diſtance.

In the ſeven years war, as the Pruſſian general, Von Drieſen, returned from the Bamberg expedition to Hof, and encamped there, he received intelligence that a party of the enemy were approaching. Major Von Röhl, of Seculy's Huſſars, received orders immediately to go againſt him with 300 huſſars in the night. The Pruſſian major divided his detachment into three diviſions, two of which turned ſidewards, and the other he kept with him. At day-break he met with one of the enemy's out-poſts, defeated it, together with the detachment who came to its aſſiſtance; on the purſuit, he met with a battalion

Digitized by Google

talion of volunteers, who had poſted themſelves in buſhes upon the height of Rehan. The Pruſſian major, perceiving this, halted, in order to wait for one of his detachments, one of which, commanded by Captain Ruhlman, he perceived advancing; he reſolved the moment he ſaw that this battalion retreated in a ſquare to attack them ſword in hand, and he alſo completely routed it: as he was purſuing them he fell in with an Auſtrian regiment of huſſars, whereupon he retreated in ſuch good order, that the enemy did not even attempt to annoy him.

It ſometimes happens, that you receive upon a march intelligence of a detachment that knows nothing of you, and has occupied a poſt cloſe to yours; this is generally a good opportunity to ſurpriſe him, for very often, if they receive no intelligence of the enemy, they are too apt, during day-time, to forget the neceſſary precaution. I have ſeen, more than once, the men undreſs themſelves, or ſtroll about immediately after a long march, in order to ſearch for proviſions, and the piquets, which were poſted, not in much better preparation.—It is day! Nothing from the enemy! That was enough. The 19th Engliſh regiment once repented ſuch a fault in Carolina. It was ordered to march to Charlestown; the commander thought himſelf ſufficiently ſafe, as he was between the army and

Digitized by Google

the before-mentioned fortreſs. Upon the march he occupied a poſt, not far from Monckcornes, behind a ſmall river, over which there was a bridge, placed a piquet on this ſide of the bridge, and had his two field pieces drawn in front of it. Major Armſtrong, who was a good partiſan, and who was ſkirmiſhing between the army and Charleſtown, received information by his ſpies the moment that the Engliſh colonel had occupied this poſt. Though he had already made a long march, he took a handful of men, whoſe horſes ſtill appeared to be freſh; ſtole along through the woods as near the bridge as poſſible; galloped to it in the middle of the day, hewed down the piquet and many Engliſh ſoldiers in camp, the remainder were forced to take ſhelter in the neighbouring wood, and he returned without loſing a man.

If ſent out to deſtroy the magazines of the enemy, to take hoſtages or levy contributions, it muſt be done with the cavalry, for ſuch duties muſt be performed expeditiouſly. In this caſe, it would be well to have mounted infantry, as I have before mentioned; for as you may be very diſtant from the army, the cavalry, covered always by infantry, can go double the diſtance, and be doubly ſecure. I adviſe you on ſuch expeditions not to remain too long in one place, to halt always in the moſt covered countries when you

Digitized by Google

you wiſh to reſt, and on your return to take a round-about way. For inſtance; as Prince Henry in 1758 invaded Franconia with the army from Vogtland, and the Pruſſian corps under General Drieſen advanced to Bamberg, upon which the army of the empire had marched as far as Saaz in Bohemia in order to cover it: General Belling, then Lieutenant-Colonel, went with his huſſars to Sarden and Konigwarth in the rear of the army of the empire, took hoſtages with him, and returned over Aſch. Immediately after he went again with his huſſars in the country of Bamberg, as far as Kupferberg, from thence to Kemnat and Auterbach in the Upper Pfalz, and returned over Erbach, Forckheim and Bamberg, after taking a great number of hoſtages, and having ſpread terror and raiſed contribution through almoſt the whole of Franconia and Upper Pfalz.

This ſecond example ſhews, that when ſuch expeditions are undertaken with promptitude and precaution, they are generally ſucceſsful. On 17th July, as the army under Lord Cornwallis during the Virginian campaigns ſtood at Suffolk, Colonel Dundas paſſed the Nanſemond river with the 80th Scotch regiment of foot, which had been mounted by permiſſion of the commander in chief, turned the enemy's corps under General Barker, which ſtood behind Blackwater's

Digitized by Google

River; deſtroyed an enemy's magazine in the neighbourhood of Edenton on the frontiers of North Carolina, and returned by Sommerton to the army on the 19th evening, having gone more than 100 miles.

If you find by good and truſty ſpies that a detachment of the enemy be on their march to attack you, and he has a defilé to paſs, you muſt haſten to occupy it, and to conceal yourſelf in ſuch a manner, that when he has paſſed the defilé with a part of his men, (ſhould he have forgotten the neceſſary precaution), you can fall upon him; but this muſt be done in the moſt ſudden and reſolute manner, for you will have it in your power to ſuffer as many of the enemy to come out of the defilé as you think proper to attack; whilſt thoſe in the rear cannot give the leaſt aſſiſtance, but on the contrary will be thrown into confuſion themſelves, and be obliged to fly with the others. In this manner a few hundred cavalry will be a match for thouſands, and even rout them.

But in this caſe the enemy ſhould not be purſued farther than the defilé; for as his remaining men on the other ſide of the defilé will certainly form up, you would be falling into the ſame ſnare yourſelf, and loſe all your former advantage.

For inſtance, had Colonel Dundas followed this

Digitized by Google

this rule, and gone to meet the Duke de Lauzun as far as the defilé near Porwell's Mill, inſtead of waiting for him at Saul's Plantation, near Glouceſter, he would certainly have overcome the French huſſars; and ſuppoſing the Duke to have uſed the greateſt precaution in paſſing the defilé, our retreat would have always been ſafe, having light infantry with us, and the greateſt part of the road to Glouceſter being woody.

There are circumſtances in war, which muſt be performed in ſuch haſte, that cavalry alone can be employed: but as you may be forced to return the ſame way, and have to riſk yourſelf in the ſame defilées through which you went, ſuch defilées ought to be occupied with light infantry, in order to ſecure your rear, and prevent being cut off by the enemy. For inſtance, as Lord Cornwallis in the Virginian campaign marched on the 20th June from New Kent Court-houſe towards Williamſburg, and wiſhed to conceal his march from the Marquis de la Fayette who ſtood near Richmond, he ordered Colonel Simcoe to manœuvre towards Newcaſtle, which lay behind Richmond, in order to attract the enemy's attention to that quarter; the colonel had with him his own regiment, the yager's detachment, and the mounted riflemen; but on his rout to the Black and Matadequin rivers, (upon the left bank of the latter of which there is an ex-

Digitized by Google

tenſive defilé, which he was forced to leave in his rear, having no other way to chooſe for his return, and eſpecially as the defilé of Matadequin lay in a direct line with Richmond, where the enemy was) the colonel ſent me with a grenadier and a light infantry company together with the yagers behind the firſt, and Major Armſtrong, with the ranger's battalion, to ſtand behind the latter, in order to cover both paſſes. As the road from Richmond to Newcaſtle entered the road from Williamſburg, at the paſs of Matadequin River, I poſted for ſecurity Captain Stauvenſand upon this road ſome miles on my left towards Richmond; I had alſo poſted an officer with 30 yagers in a thicket upon the great road, ſome miles off between the paſs where Major Armſtrong ſtood and myſelf. The enemy's party fell upon both my advance poſts, but being repulſed with loſs, they gave up the attempt: towards evening Colonel Simcoe, who had taken an American colonel priſoner in a ſkirmiſh, returned, and we joined the army about midnight at Baun's Plantation.

If you have the advance guard of an army, or of a corps that is appointed to inveſt a fortreſs, you muſt as ſoon as you are a few leagues from it haſten your march as much as poſſible, in order to arrive before the place unexpectedly, and ruſh into the ſuburbs, where you will probably ſurpriſe

Digitized by Google

ſurpriſe many officers and men. The commander of the fortreſs may perhaps have committed a fault, and ſuffered the cattle to graze near town until the laſt moment, which will thus fall into your hands, and occaſion a ſcarcity in the town a few days ſooner, only you muſt not pay any attention to the firing from the ramparts, which will certainly take place; for as your army is following, and certainly ſeen by the enemy from the ſteeples, you may be aſſured that he will not ſend out any troops againſt you, leſt ſuch troops ſhould be driven back, and you preſs with them at the ſame time into the town.

If the enemy be routed, or he retreats ſo faſt that you cannot come up with him, be doubly on your guard, and not half intoxicated with your good fortune, for you cannot tell what kind of an opponent you have to deal with. The following example will ſupport this rule. It was during the war which Charles the Twelfth, king of Sweden, carried on with the Ruſſians and Auguſtus, king of Poland; this hero in the campaign of 1701 had already made himſelf maſter of Courland, and ſent his detachment as far as the Poliſh territory, in order to protect Prince Sapicha againſt Oginſky, who had openly declared againſt the king of Sweden, and attacked and routed ſeveral detachments of the Swediſh army. The king reſolved to find out, attack, and deſtroy this

Digitized by Google

this enemy. For this purpoſe he ordered on the 1ſt of December, in the night, a detachment of 400 men of the foot guards to be conveyed in ſledges, entered Courland, and joined Colonel Humerhielm, who was poſted with a detachment of cavalry at Schandau. The march was continued from Schandau to Calivaria, to which place ——— Meyerfeld, then ſtationed at Polangen, was ordered. The king, who here received intelligence that the enemy was at Skudi, haſtened to it with the cavalry; but the enemy had left Skudi in great haſte, and retired farther off. The king reſolved to wait for the infantry at Skudi, and leaving it behind him in this town, haſtened on the following day towards Tirkſel, which place Oginſky had only left a few minutes when the king arrived, and had taken his route to Tirſky. The king purſued him thither, but ſtill not finding him as expected, he gave up all hopes of meeting with him. As the troops were now weary, and wanted reſt, the king ordered them to be quartered in the town, and he himſelf occupied the caſtle, where for ſafety a guard of only 30 cavalry was poſted. Oginſky, who was inſtantly informed by the prieſt of the town of the ſecurity of the Swedes, took 6000 men in the night, and haſtened to Triſki, in order to ſurpriſe them. He found it open, galloped into it with a loud ſhout as far as the market place, where he ſet

Digitized by Google

ſet fire to ſome houſes, in order to increaſe the confuſion of the Swedes. The Swedes, who had not in the leaſt expected ſuch a viſit, and had gone to bed, awoke, and took up arms with ſuch precipitation, that many of them appeared on horſeback in their very ſhirts. Captain Sack, and Count Flemming of the horſe guards were the firſt who came on horſeback; they collected a handful of men, and attacked the Poles with the greateſt courage, which reſolution gave the remainder of the Swedes time to collect themſelves, and ſupport the attack. The Poles were attacked on all ſides and driven back. The Swedes fell ſo furiouſly upon them, that great numbers of Poles were cut to pieces or taken; Oginſky's own horſe and a pair of kettle-drums fell into the hands of the brave Swedes.

In this inſtance, the manner in which Oginſky executed his excellent plan, is as much to blame as the ſecurity of Charles the 12th; had the former ſilently occupied the avenues and ſtreets around the quarters of the Swedes, and ſent a ſtrong detachment to the caſtle, where the firſt attack ought to have been made, his ſucceſs muſt have been certain; eſpecially being ſo far ſuperior in number. The Swedes would have been cut to pieces one by one as they came out of the houſes, the king taken priſoner, and the Poliſh

Digitized by Google

Poliſh general would have had the honour of having put an end to the war.

SECTION II.

Of the choice of a Poſt in the Field.

WHATEVER may be the object of an out-poſt, all the rules laid down for this branch of ſervice have the ſame tendency: viz. to beware againſt inſult, and adopt ſuch meaſures as will render even the beſt plan of the enemy abortive.

Out-poſts, where light troops are generally employed, are intended for covering an army or corps and to ſecure it from ſurprize. They are calculated to obſerve an enemy laying oppoſite, or at a ſhort diſtance, attend to his motions, and ſend to head-quarters a ſatisfactory report of every circumſtance which may be diſcovered; and in the mean time, ſhould the enemy commit himſelf in any reſpect, the out-poſts will endeavour to ſeize the opportunity and execute a *coup de main.*

This will prove, how vigilant and cautious out-poſts ſhould be, as the ſafety of the whole army, and the lives and liberty of thouſands reſt upon them.

The

Digitized by Google

The firſt rule for the commander of a light corps who arrives at a poſt which he knows only by the map, will be to march to ſome commanding ground, and there leave the men under arms until he receive intelligence of the enemy; for which purpoſe he ſhould ſend ſmall parties of cavalry to all the avenues leading to the enemy; theſe will collect information in the neighbouring villages, and bring back with them ſome of the principal inhabitants.

The commanding officer ſhould endeavour to get from theſe people the intelligence he wants; he ſhould enquire about all the iſſues which may lead towards the enemy, at what diſtance he is, how ſtrong, and how far he ſends his patroles, in order not to forget this laſt point, he ought to mark the names of ſuch places upon his map. He ſhould aſk thoſe inhabitants who appear friendly inclined to recommend ſome truſty man to ſerve as a ſpy, upon being well paid. He ſhould beſides, procure the beſt guides, ride with them about the country, place his poſts, and let the men off duty reſt themſelves, and cook their victuals. Infantry may be ſuffered to take off their accoutrements, and the cavalry to unbridle and feed their horſes; but no man is to be permitted to pull off his clothes, or go out of camp.

Guards of cavalry muſt be placed in the open country, where videts can command an extenſive proſpect;

Digitized by Google

proſpect; and centinels be planted in the thickeſt cover, though in ſuch a manner as to be able to diſcover their front and flanks at ſome diſtance. If the ground permit, vedettes and ſentries ought to be advanced as far as eight hundred or a thouſand paces. During the night the guards of cavalry muſt retire and take poſt behind thoſe of infantry. Riflemen ſhould perform the day, and light infantry the night duty, or act together mixed. If it can be done and the ground allow it, vedettes and ſentries ſhould be poſted during the night ſo as to have high ground before them, as an object is far more eaſily diſcerned at night from below, than in looking down from an hill.

If there be in the neighbourhood a wood croſſed by any roads leading to the enemy, or any defile near the poſts through which the enemy can approach undiſcovered; in either caſe the piquets muſt be advanced to theſe places; but ſhould the poſt you are ordered to take be ill choſen, and ſhould you find a much better within about a thouſand paces, occupy the latter by all means, taking care to acquaint the general with it. For inſtance, in lord Cornwallis's retreat from Suffolk to Portſmouth, an officer of the ſtaff planted me with a detachment of cavalry and infantry, between a thick wood and a river, the banks of which were ſwampy on both ſides, with a dyke and bridge acroſs. As I had been

Digitized by Google

been wounded in that very place, five months before in a ſkirmiſh, and fortunately for me knew the country better than he; I retreated over the dyke, reported the circumſtance to head-quarters, and my conduct was approved.

In another inſtance; when General Sir H. Clinton made his retreat from Philadelphia, through the Jerſeys in the year 1778, and wiſhed to paſs the Ankocus by Foſtertown, along which river the enemy had ruined all the bridges; I was ſent over with 150 yagers, to take poſt and cover the working parties which were to repair the bridge. The place where I had been ſent was a plain, ſurrounded at the diſtance of a league with woods and heights, under the cover of which, the enemy could have approached unperceived and attacked me unawares. I placed my poſts as I had been ordered, but taking with me an officer and 30 men proceeded to the ſummit of the higheſt hill, in order to reconnoitre the country around; from thence I perceived at the diſtance of half a league, a few houſes and a mill, and by examining my map I concluded that it was a place called Carſtown, ſituated upon an arm of the Ankocus. I ſent for 30 yagers more, and having approached the place I ſaw that the bridge upon that arm had alſo been ruined. The mill was occupied by a ſmall party of riflemen, who gave way after a few ſhots, when they ſaw that

Digitized by Google

that I was determined to carry the poſt. I contrived to croſs the river upon the ruins of the bridge, occupied the mill and reported my conduct; upon which I received orders to continue where I was; I was reinforced with 30 yagers more, the bridge repaired during the night, and the general did me the honour to acknowledge that I had gained for him a day's march.

If the enemy be near, the beſt way (ſuppoſing the rear to be well covered,) will be to draw the out-poſts as near as poſſible to thoſe of the enemy; they will thereby cover more effectually the intended ground; the men will be more alert, having the enemy in ſight, his motions will be more eaſily watched, and a better opportunity given to profit by any fault he may commit. General Luckner always acted in this manner during the ſeven years war; the duke of Lauzun by Glouceſter in Virginia, would by this means have been of great ſervice to the corps under General Choiſy, if Lord Cornwallis had attempted to fight his way out of York, on that ſide with the remnant of his army, as was in fact the original intention of this brave general.

Placing piquets and centinels is not to be conſidered as the only method for protecting an out-poſt; patroles muſt alſo be frequently ſent towards the enemy in order to procure timely intelligence of his motions and approach; theſe muſt

Digitized by Google

muſt be, eſpecially, during the night, inceſſantly backwards and forwards upon the roads which lead in that direction and croſs each other before the line of vedettes and ſentries. If the country be ſo interſected that the poſts cannot ſee far before them, or a defile, be ſo ſituated in front, that it cannot be conveniently occupied, and might offer an opportunity to the enemy to approach undiſcovered, it would be proper to prepare in the night-time an ambuſcade of a non-commiſſioned officer and a few yagers, with orders to give a volley as ſoon as they ſhould hear a party of the enemy approaching. Suppoſing that it ſhould occaſion the loſs of a man or two; ſo inconſiderable a loſs is not adequate to the immenſe advantage which would reſult from this meaſure; and if the yagers be properly trained, it will but ſeldom happen. I cannot recollect more than one inſtance during the ſeven campaigns of the American war, where an ambuſcade of this kind was loſt. It happened near Portſmouth on the 19th of March 1781, when General Arnold was informed that the Marquis de la Fayette was marching againſt him with a ſtrong corps; in order to be acquainted in time with the approach of that corps, I placed a non-commiſſioned officer and 6 yagers in ambuſcade at about half a league upon the road which the enemy was to take, two of whom fell into his

 hands,

Digitized by Google

hands, but the Heſſian and Anſpach yagers were ſo well trained to this kind of warfare, that they were equal to the artful Croats, and even theſe two would not have been taken priſoners, if, out of eagerneſs to ſhoot ſome of the enemy, they had not ſuffered his advance guard to approach them too near.

Such ambuſcades are principally uſeful in an enemy's country where the inhabitants are unfriendly towards you; and it will prevent the enemy from ſhooting or carrying off ſentries in which the American militia were as great adepts as the Croats; it ſecures ſo effectually your poſts againſt parties of the enemy, that they will not afterwards approach them without fear.

Strong patroles of infantry and cavalry ought alſo to be ſent out daily towards the enemy, eſpecially before day-break, *but not at any fixed hour*, in order to diſappoint or make him ſuffer, if he ſhould attempt to ſurprize any of your ſmall patroles.

Whole companies or troops may alſo, now and then, be poſted in covered countries, between the out-poſts and the enemy, and fall unawares upon ſuch parties as may approach.

If you be frequently alarmed by the enemy, do not ſuffer it quietly, but alarm him ſtill more frequently, in order to keep him in awe, and tire him out.

During

Digitized by Google

During the day time, the men are in general to be allowed as much reſt as circumſtances will admit, eſpecially if the country be open around you; cavalry may then be permitted to unbridle and unſaddle for a moment to eaſe the horſes, and infantry to take off their accoutrements, but not to ſtraggle out of camp without leave. Before ſun-ſet cavalry muſt bridle and infantry put on their accoutrements; but ſhould the enemy be near, cavalry muſt always remain bridled; and at the time of feeding, one half muſt be ready to mount on horſeback, and ſo on by turns; during the night, half of the cavalry muſt mount alternately, and half of the infantry remain under arms in the ſame manner.

If you arrive in the night time at a poſt within a ſhort diſtance from the enemy, and be unacquainted with the country, you ſhould remain on the ſpot under arms, and detach ſmall parties of a non-commiſſioned officer and 4 or 6 men towards the front and flanks to the diſtance of four or five hundred paces; a few of theſe men muſt be ſent two or three times every hour, four or five hundred paces ſtill farther, halt and liſten attentively; they muſt be ordered to fire as ſoon as they perceive the enemy, and at the moment one of theſe ſmall parties fires, the whole chain muſt do the ſame; this cannot fail to embarraſs even a ſtrong enemy ſhould he be approaching.

Digitized by Google

This once liberated the two firſt yager companies from a night attack of the enemy, at Raritonlanding, in New-Jerſey. In the winter of the beginning of 1777, the American Colonel Butler and Major Otterndorf, who were poſted with a ſtrong corps, about a league from Rariton-landing, formed the plan of carrying the two companies at once from three different ſides, in the night time, as the frequent attempts they had made upon my poſt, which formed a projecting angle out of the chain, had always miſcarried; the diviſion which arrived on the right of Quieteltown, and which intended to have penetrated between Captain Wreden's poſt and mine, was diſcovered firſt; the ſentries fired, and as I had a few weeks before, given orders that when a ſentry fired, the whole chain ſhould; fortunately for us they all fired; the two other American diviſions thought that they had alſo been diſcovered, gave up the attempt and retired quietly.

The officers and non-commiſſioned officers of grand guards and piquets, muſt be pointedly informed of what they have to do; they muſt eſpecially be ſtrictly ordered to report without delay to the commander of the corps whatever they may have obſerved.

Such intelligence as may be received from deſerters or ſpies is not to be deſpiſed and neglected, though apparently improbable; an officer

Digitized by Google

cer will do well to prepare in conſequence, eſpecially if he have to deal with a cunning and enterpriſing enemy, for one of this deſcription will never follow the beaten tract of ſtratagems, but act in a manner wholly new and unexpected. The loſs of the important poſt at Stony-point, was entirely owing to the obſtinacy of the commanding officer, who deſpiſed the information given him the day before by the inhabitants: in the ſame year and from the ſame cauſe the enemy would have ſucceeded in the attack upon Paul's-hook, if the American Colonel Lee had been as enterprizing as General Vane; for the commander of Paul's-hook had treated the notice of the intended attack upon his poſt with the ſame contempt as the former.

A light corps is frequently poſted in order to ſecure the communication between two armies, or between an army, a ſtrong detachment, and a fortified town; or, to prevent that communication between two armies or fortified towns of the enemy and intercept his convoys.

For inſtance; in the firſt caſe, when Lord Cornwallis marched through both the Carolinas, finding himſelf too far from Charleſtown to preſerve a communication with that place, which was abſolutely neceſſary for him, he left Colonel Cruger with a corps of light troops at Sixtynine.

In the ſecond caſe, towards the end of the

Digitized by Google

campaign of 1757, when Prince Charles of Lorraine followed the Duke of Bevern into Silesia, whilst the King of Prussia was in Saxony, General Haddick was sent with a body of Croats and hussars to observe the motions of the king, as it was probable that he would hasten to the relief of Silesia. General Haddick therefore took post at Grossenhayn behind the Röder whence he could at all times watch the motions of the king; Frederick advanced, and General Haddick having acquainted the imperial army in Silesia with the approach of the king, retired before him to Bohemia, through Konigsbruck, Bautzen, and Luben.

2dly. During the siege of Olmutz, Colonel Lanius had taken post with 150 Croats and hussars near Friedland and Lobnik, upon the road from Neis to Olmutz, and having received information that General Fouquet was on his march from Neis to Olmutz with a strong convoy, he attacked, during the night, the division commanded by General Puttkammer; but the vigilance of the Prussian infantry was such that he was obliged to retire after an unsuccessful attempt. A short time afterwards he was more fortunate upon the same ground, having gained the woods and heights near Teutchlodnis, he fell upon two free corps (Lenoble and Salenmon) in the defilé of Lebenhufen, upon the Prussian line

Digitized by Google

line of communication, and took a few pieces of artillery and about 300 priſoners.

The enemy will certainly employ every means in his power to overtake and deſtroy ſuch detachments; they muſt therefore be the more vigilant; as long as the ſeaſon of the year permit, they ought never to return to the ſame place at night, but move as often as poſſible, and procure good ſpies who will give timely information; they muſt not, however, loſe ſight of the object in view, and above all ſecure their retreat, for fear of being cut off. For inſtance, ſuppoſe that our army occupy Fulda, and this place be blockaded or beſieged by an enemy who receives his convoys from Hanau or Aſchaffenburg, as he could not occupy Gelnhauſen on account of its natural poſition, half ſurrounded with high mountains, I am detached there, in order to annoy him upon the road, from Hanau to Aſchaffenburg; admitting that the Wetterau be in our poſſeſſion and the country of Mayntz in our favor: being ſo ſituated, I would procure ſpies in Gelnhauſen, Salmunſter, Hanau, and about Aſchaffenburg and Dettingen, to be informed when the enemy ſhould ſend convoys by water from Aſchaffenburg to Hanau, and when theſe ſhould be tranſported from Hanau to Fulda: I would change my poſition every night and let no one be informed of it but my principal ſpy,

Digitized by Google

who ſhould live in Gelnhauſen and tranſmit to me the intelligence which he may receive from the other ſpies: I would ſucceſſively occupy the following poſitions: Firſtly, Durich near Gelnhauſen; Secondly, The wood between Wachterſbach and the great farm; Thirdly, In the rear of Breitenborn; Fourthly, In the wood of Budingen near Hunerhof; and Fifthly, By the Abt's Ecke. From this laſt, (which I ſhould not occupy often) I would make inroads with ſmall parties to the very gates of Hanau, and carry off officers from the *promenades*; but as ſoon as my *coup de main* ſhould have been performed, I would withdraw to Nidda, Hungen, or even farther; approach the road of Fulda by Gedern once more, remain for a few nights between Salmunſter and Steinau, and watch another opportunity: this country being much covered with woods and hills, it is impoſſible that the enemy could ever completely ſurround me; whatever appears impoſſible to the generality of men, is always the eaſier in the execution. If one of my ſpies inform me that a large convoy of the enemy be going from Aſchaffenburg to Hanau, I would go towards the mountains, croſs them between Haitz and the Kaltenborn, paſs the river Kintzig at Hochſt, approach the right bank of the Mayn through the Speſſart, and endeavour to burn the convoy; if I ſhould fail in my enterpriſe,

Digitized by Google

priſe, I would deſtroy all the boats I could on the banks of the Mayn; this alone would be ſufficient, as it would greatly augment the enemy's difficulty, in tranſporting forage or proviſions, and of courſe haraſs his troops by forcing him to protect all his convoys with ſtrong detachments. There is in fact, very little danger attending expeditions of this kind; for, you arrive at a place of ſafety before the enemy's troops in the country are informed of it, and can march in conſequence. In this inſtance, in order the better to conceal my retreat from the enemy, who would probably ſend ſtrong detachments from Hanau on both ſides of the Kintzig as far as Gelnhauſen and Salmunſter to intercept my party, I would direct my retreat, through the Speſſart, inclining to the right towards Bieber and Orberreiſſig, croſs the Kintzig near Schluchtern and endeavour to regain the Wetterau. Should I be informed that the enemy be preparing to ſend a convoy from Hanau, I would remain as privately as poſſible in the country where I was, that the enemy might not be informed of my poſition. I would march off during the night, croſs the Kintzig near Offenau, Wertheim or Hochſt, and remain in the woody mountains behind Orb, from thence, ſend my ſpies out to aſcertain when the convoy would arrive in the vicinity of Altenhaſlau (I muſt ſuppoſe

Digitized by Google

poſe that the convoy will march upon Meerholtz in order to avoid the defilé of Gelnhauſen) as ſoon as I received certain intelligence, I would approach Salmunſter, with two thirds of my corps and make a reſolute attack upon the head of the eſcort at the moment of their entering this diſtrict, whilſt they were ſeparated from the others by the defilés of Auffenau and Hochſt. With the remaining third of my corps I would ſend ſmall detachments to annoy the eſcort between Auffenau and Hochſt, and to kill a few waggoners and horſes in order to encreaſe confuſion. If I ſhould have the good fortune to rout the eſcort, I would endeavour to deſtroy horſes and waggons as much as poſſible, and again retire to the Wetterau, through Salmunſter, Birſtein, Wenings, and Gedern; ſhould I be unſucceſsful and even completely routed, I ſhould be always ſure of eſcaping, as the enemy would not purſue being wholly occupied for the ſafety of his convoy. At all events, that woody and mountainous country would favor my retreat.

Should I, on the contrary, have to defend a country from ſuch inroads of an enemy, I would exert my utmoſt to defeat his purpoſes, and act upon the defenſive according to the ſame rules I mentioned for the offenſive. For inſtance, when General Waſhington was with his army in the year 1779 near Chatham, to cover the province of

Digitized by Google

of new Jerſey, he detached Colonel White with a light corps in order to check the incurſions of General Sir H. Clinton into the province of New York and obſerve his motions; he ſeldom remained more than twenty-four hours in one place; he was ſometimes at Bedford, at Newcaſtle, Cinq Cinq, and frequently fell, unawares, upon the outpoſts of the Engliſh. He preſerved ſuch a ſecrecy, that even the people of the country, who were all in his favor, never knew where he was. For inſtance; we had not heard of him for ſome time, and I was ſent to him under a pretence with a flag of truce; I rode the whole day, in queſt of him without being able to hear any thing of him from the inhabitants of the country, when I fell at once into one of his parties, delivered my meſſage, received the anſwer and returned as much in the dark as before reſpecting the place of his abode. The ſame artifice was once more uſed for the ſame purpoſe, and the officer who had been ſent, after as fruitleſs a reſearch as mine, met him on his return, near our outpoſts which he had alarmed early in the morning.

An officer when he occupies a poſt, muſt be particularly attentive to ſecure his rear. If circumſtances ſhould force him to leave a bridge or defilé of any kind behind him, he muſt not fail to

Digitized by Google

to occupy it with a detachment of infantry and ſend frequent patroles on that ſide.

If the poſt be on the bank of a river for the defence of a bridge, it will be neceſſary to place ſome outpoſts as far as poſſible on the other ſide of the river, that the enemy cannot come unawares; if the poſt be occupied during a few days, it would be proper to raiſe a flêche for the defence of the bridge; if time do not allow it, a few large trees may be placed *en abatis* acroſs the bridge, or ſome waggons, obſerving to take off their wheels on one ſide: the number and ſituation of the fords in the neighbourhood muſt be aſcertained, and harrows thrown into them to impede the enemy's paſſage. Small poſts muſt be placed along the river, and patroles croſs each other conſtantly on this ſide of the river.

If the ſeaſon of the year do not permit you to keep the field any longer, and the troops muſt be cantoned, or occupy winter quarters, ſelf-convenience is the laſt thing to be attended to; the largeſt barns muſt be filled with as many horſes as they can contain, obſerving the uſual precautions, that the horſes can be taken out in a moment. The light infantry muſt be lodged as crowded as poſſible in the houſes neareſt to the iſſues, and theſe be ſtopped with waggons. Two alarm poſts muſt be appointed, one for the day and the other for the night. The firſt may be in the

Digitized by Google

the front or on the ſides of the village, obſerving that the light infantry occupy the gardens and hedges; but the ſecond muſt be in the rear of the village in order to avoid being circumſcribed in your movements, as you cannot ſee from what quarter the enemy advance.

As light troops are, in general, calculated for procuring information, in caſe of retreat you act according to the intelligence you receive from them; but without precipitation, for it may be a falſe alarm and hurt your character.

Is the poſt to be maintained in caſe of attack and the troops quartered in the neighbourhood have orders to ſupport it? In this caſe, the iſſues ought to be ſtopped as completely as poſſible with trees and caſks filled with dung; the yagers take poſt behind this kind of intrenchment and hedges, and in ſuch caſes the cavalry ought to be made to fight on foot, or placed where it be leſs expoſed to the enemy's fire, in order to repulſe ſuch as would attempt to penetrate, or to be in readineſs to make a ſally on the arrival of ſuccours and fall upon the enemy in his retreat.

Between the iſſues that have been ſtopped, openings ought to be made in the hedges and maſked with buſhes, through theſe ſally out by whole platoons of infantry and cavalry upon the enemy at his onſet: whatever is unexpected ſtrikes the mind with fear, and where you hazard moſt

Digitized by Google

moſt, moſt is to be gained. The brave Lieutenant Colonel Maitland, by birth a Scotchman, who had already loſt his right hand in an action at ſea againſt the French, and nevertheleſs went, through the hardſhips of the duties of the Engliſh light infantry, preſerved in this manner Stony-ferry in South Carolina; with only 500 Britiſh and Heſſians, he repulſed the attack of General Lincoln with 3000 Americans; Lieutenant Kuhne of the Heſſian grenadiers ſignalized himſelf there in one of the ſallies.

Should you receive from your ſpies, a certain information, that the enemy intend a *coup de main* upon your poſt during the night, you muſt endeavour to lay a ſnare for him. For inſtance, let him approach as near as poſſible, and then falling furiouſly upon him from every quarter, cut down as many as you can, and retire to your poſt.

Half of the corps may alſo be placed in ambuſcade, at half a league, on the right or left of the road upon which the enemy are to come; and whilſt he attacks the poſt, theſe will fall upon his flank or rear. For example:—In the winter of 1762, the Auſtrian Colonel D'Alton, who was poſted at Reichenbach in Sileſia, had laid a plan to ſurpriſe the Pruſſian detachment, commanded by Pritwitz, which occupied Rothenſieben; but the latter had information of it, and placing himſelf

Digitized by Google

ſelf in ambuſcade with his detachment, upon the road, fell unawares upon Colonel D'Alton on his march, routed him, and took above a hundred priſoners.

Should you receive certain intelligence that the enemy intend a ſurpriſe upon your poſt, and be alſo aſſured of the road he will take; march at the ſame time by another road upon his own poſt, carry off all he may have left in it, obſerving to follow, on your return, the road by which the enemy went, and which, according to the principles of the art of war, he will not certainly take on his return: General Luckner once made uſe of this ſtratagem againſt Colonel Fiſher's corps during the ſeven year's war.

Light troops are alſo employed in ſieges, to blockade thoſe ſides of the beſieged town upon which the real attack is not intended; on this duty, the commander of a light corps, muſt be particularly vigilant to guard againſt any ſally the garriſon may attempt for the purpoſe of procuring proviſions from the neighbouring villages; under theſe circumſtances the night poſts of the light corps ought to be placed as near as poſſible to the town, the corps itſelf be under arms during each night, and at leaſt one half remain accoutred and the horſes bridled in the day time, in order to be always ready to fall upon the ſally and repulſe it; this muſt be done in the moſt

Digitized by Google

moſt reſolute and furious manner, and ſacrifice every thing rather than ſuffer the enemy to ſucceed in his intentions; for the few heads of horned cattle he might thus procure, would probably retard the fall of the place two or three days longer, if the garriſon be ſmall and the commandant reſolute. In the ſecond ſiege of Caſſel, the Brunſwick, Turkiſh corps, occupied the Waldau and Bettenhauſen; in the middle of the day the French made a ſally upon theſe villages whilſt the herds were grazing in the meadows, and ſucceeded in driving them into the town, becauſe the Turkiſh corps was not ready to check the ſally as it ought to have been. When you occupy ſuch a poſt before the garriſon is completely blockaded and prevented from going out of its gates, the beſt plan will be to order the peaſants to drive their cattle to ſome villages in the rear, or forbid ſending them to graze at all; for, if you be in an enemy's country the inhabitants may eaſily have previouſly agreed with the commandant to graze their cattle as near as poſſible to the town; and as, in ſuch circumſtances, they look upon them as loſt, it is not improbable that they ſhould prefer their falling into the hands of friends.

Before I conclude this Section, I will offer for inſtruction one more example reſpecting the country about Gelnhauſen: It is the winter expedition

Digitized by Google

pedition of 1761, under Prince Ferdinand, when, in the beginning of February, the Allies fell unawares out of Weſtphalia upon the French, and advanced upon Caſſel, Ziegenhayn, and Marburg, whilſt a flying corps under the Hereditary Prince of Brunſwick entered the Wetterau, and the parties of his light troops ſpread themſelves over the country, as far as the gates of Hanau, into the cantonments of that part of the French army which had collected near Bergen. General Luckner, who covered the left wing of the corps commanded by the Hereditary Prince, advanced as far as Gelnhauſen, which was occupied by Count Chabot, who retreated upon the Speſſart at the approach of the Allies. Before he advanced further through Budingen, the Hereditary Prince had left a corps at Bierſtein, in order to favour his or General Luckner's retreat ſhould it become neceſſary. When the latter had found Gelnhauſen abandoned by the enemy, he took his quarters in it, and remained perfectly quiet, day and night, in this town, whoſe inhabitants were far from being well affected to the Allies: this conduct appears the more ſurpriſing from ſo celebrated a *partiſan*, eſpecially as he knew Count Chabot to be a man of great military talents; he had, however, covered his front and right flank; but according to what information I have obtained in the country, he had entirely

Digitized by Google

neglected the bridges of Hoechſt, Wertheim and Auffenau: had Count Chabot been more enterpriſing, and had he paſſed the Kintzig by Höchſt or Auffenau, with the greater part of his corps, and placed himſelf in ambuſcade between the Glaſshütte and Gelnhauſen, whilſt one of his parties might have made a falſe attack upon Luckner's out-poſts about Altenhaſlau, the latter muſt have been undone, having no retreat left but upon Birſtein, and a long chain of defilées in his rear: Count Chabot would, in fact, have riſked nothing in this enterpriſe, as no one could have cut off his retreat upon the Speſſart. I was alſo informed that a gentleman in Gelnhauſen had acquainted Count Chabot with the imprudent ſecurity of General Luckner, and that he had, in conſequence of this information, advanced to Groſſenhauſen to attack Luckner, but, fortunately for the latter, an officer of Count Chabot's corps who attempted to ſeize upon an inhabitant of Eichhof, probably for a guide, had been ſo careleſs as to ſuffer the farmer to eſcape; General Luckner being acquainted by him with the danger he was in, quitted Gelnhauſen inſtantly, and retreated expeditiouſly upon Birſtein.

This example will prove, how dangerous it is to ſhut one ſelf up in a place, eſpecially one like Gelnhauſen, which forms a true *cul de ſac*. Supposing even that, on account of the rigour of the

Digitized by Google

the ſeaſon, the Hanoverian General was obliged to put his men under cover, could not he have done it during the day only? But it being in the month of March, his men living in plenty, and eſpecially as the place was not capable of defence, and he was not to remain long in it, he could very well have left it every night, and have occupied the wood of Breitenborn; in this caſe he wanted only an out-poſt at the Glaſshütte, and another about Kaltenborn; the first, for ſending patroles on this ſide of the Kintzig from Höchſt till above Auffenau, and the ſecond would have performed the ſame duty over the Gettenbach towards Hanau; he could, moreover, have placed a day poſt of *avertiſſement*, on the top of the tower in Gelnhauſen, and another in the vineyards out of the Haitzer gate; beſides, I ſhould always prefer the poſt of Breitenbach to that of Gelnhauſen, becauſe from the latter place I could have an equal command over the whole country, by ſending out detachments, and be ſafe on my rear.

If a partiſan have reaſon to ſuppoſe that a general engagement will ſoon occur between both armies, he muſt endeavour to poſt himſelf in ſuch a manner, that he may, during the action, turn the rear of the enemy and fall upon their baggage or ſtores. Whatever be the fate of the battle, if he be enterpriſing, he can greatly hurt the

Digitized by Google

enemy; at ſuch a time, he has nothing to fear from the enemy's partiſans, for, during a battle, they are on the flanks, or at a very little diſtance from their army, ready to cover the retreat in caſe of bad ſucceſs, or to improve victory and annoy the retreat of the vanquiſhed enemy. For inſtance:—Could not a Luckner or a Scheider have attempted, during the night before the battle of Bergen, to penetrate as far as the heights between Homburg and Frankfurth, which is a very woody and covered country, and while the armies were engaged, could not he have rapidly advanced cloſe upon Frankfurth, and carried off or deſtroyed the field equipage of the French, or whatever he might have met with? Who knows what might have happened if the French had heard, during the battle, the news of ſuch an event in their rear? At leaſt it could have been attempted without danger; for the whole of the French army was at Bergen, the garriſon of Frankfurth would certainly not have riſked itſelf out of the gates, and whatever might have been the reſult, a partiſan was ſure to make his retreat good by inclining towards the right. For inſtance: during the battle of Soor, gained by the King of Pruſſia over the Auſtrians, the Croats fell upon the rear of the Pruſſian army, and carried off the King's chancery, and part of the baggage of that army. Another inſtance of this kind

Digitized by Google

kind occurred during the battle of Prague; the Auſtrian General Beck, with a corps of Croats, turned alſo the Pruſſian army, carried ſword in hand the town of Prandeis, which was garriſoned by a Pruſſian battalion for the protection of the camp equipage, killed a great number, took upwards of 600 priſoners, beſides ſeveral pairs of colours, and, loaded with booty, happily made his retreat upon General Daun's army, after having deſtroyed the bridge upon the Elbe. Did not the Croats uſe the ſame manœuvre againſt Guſtavus Adolphus, during the battle of Lutzen? and it muſt be obſerved, that the greateſt partiſans that ever exiſted belonged to that nation. I will here give a fourth example:—Whilſt the French army and the Allies were in preſence of each other by Minden, General Freitag was near Hameln with the Hanoverian yagers; he foreſaw the battle, marched privately towards Detmold, and carried off a whole column of French camp equipage, which they were ſending back immediately after the battle.—Theſe examples will prove that ſucceſs will always favour the bold, and indeed there is hardly any thing impoſſible to the commander of a well-diſciplined light corps, if he have but courage and judgment; only he muſt not follow the beaten track if he wiſhes to obtain uncommon ſucceſs.

Digitized by Google

SECTION III.

Of Incloſed Poſts.

THESE poſts being in general calculated for reſiſting a *coup de main*, an officer entruſted with ſuch a command, muſt take every precaution to ſecure it from ſurpriſe: for, if the poſt be part of the chain of winter cantonments, or intended for covering a communication, it renders it of ſuch importance, that the laſt man muſt be ſacrificed for its defence. On arriving at a poſt of this kind, the firſt thing will be to aſſemble the principal inhabitants, or the municipality, and procure every information reſpecting the place, and whether there be any concealed iſſues, particularly if a river paſs through or near the place: for example—the Kintzig runs between the ſuburb and the town of Gelnhauſen, and forms an iſland at the upper part of the town near the caſtle; if the garriſon, in time of war, were to think themſelves perfectly ſecure on that ſide, being covered by the river, an artful enemy could eaſily make them ſuffer for it; for the river is fordable for men and horſes at the place where it divides into two arms and forms an iſland, and the town may be entered through the mills.

The

Digitized by Google

The commanding officer muſt, immediately after his arrival, take a ride round the place, within as well as without, and obſerve whether the enemy can approach undiſcovered from any quarter, and what ſide of the wall be leſs capable of defence. If you ſuſpect the inhabitants, you will do well to ſecure ſome of the principal, more eſpecially thoſe who have the moſt influence in the place; they muſt be guarded in their own houſes, and the inhabitants informed that, in caſe of treachery, theſe hoſtages will be put to death; they may alſo be forced, in caſe of neceſſity, to recommend certain people to ſerve as ſpies, and be made anſwerable for them.

But after having ſhewn this ſeverity for your own ſafety; you muſt alſo aſſure the inhabitants that you will maintain diſcipline among your ſoldiers; and that every indulgence will be granted, which their behaviour may deſerve.

The municipality muſt be ordered to require from the inhabitants an immediate delivery of their arms and ammunition; the bells muſt never be ſuffered to be rung, and no perſon to leave the town without permiſſion from the commandant; every houſekeeper muſt be informed that he is perſonally anſwerable, with his life, for every perſon of his family, and even for his lodgers: as ſoon as it begins to be dark, no perſon is to go in the ſtreets without light, and except in caſe of

Digitized by Google

abſolute neceſſity, no one, whoever he may be, ſhall be in the ſtreets after nine o'clock; no public ſolemnities or diverſions muſt be allowed; and in caſe of an alarm, lights muſt be placed in the windows of the firſt and ſecond floor, but nobody attempt to go out of doors; innkeepers muſt be ordered to ſend to the main-guard every day the names and the buſineſs of every perſon they lodge, from whence they come, and where they go. All theſe orders muſt be given in writing to the municipality, that ignorance may be no excuſe for diſobedience.

A main-guard muſt be fixed upon, about the center of the town, guards placed at every gate, and a ſmall poſt on the higheſt ſteeple (I would recommend truſty non-commiſſioned officers to be employed for this laſt duty); the men muſt be quartered as comfortably as poſſible, night alarm poſts appointed for each half company or company, towards the iſſues of the place; cavalry muſt be ordered, in this caſe, to fall in near the main-guard; every officer in the garriſon muſt know perfectly where his company or platoon is to fall in. If ſome parts of the walls of the place ſhould not permit the men to ſtand upon them and fire, a rampart walk muſt be made up with thick planks laid upon treſtles, waggons, or upon caſks, obſerving, that where ſentries are to be planted, the place muſt be raiſed a little higher in

Digitized by Google

in order to command a more extenſive view. In the day time, ſentries may be planted ſingly, but during the night doubled, and ſo ſituated, that nothing can ſteal unperceived between them: ſhould theſe walls be ſo high, that the temporary walks cannot be made without much labour and time, the upper part of the wall muſt be pulled down towards the inſide, and the rampart walk built with the ſtones. The parapet ought not to be raiſed higher than up to the mid-body of the ſoldier, for ſhould it be higher, the men are liable to conceal themſelves too much behind it, and fire in the air, in order to be leſs expoſed; and you muſt endeavour to perſuade them that parapets are not intended as a cover from the enemy's fire, but merely as an obſtacle to the enemy.

All the gates but one, or at moſt two, muſt be ſtopped up; it is in general done with litter heaped up ſo high, that a man can hardly creep out above it. Gates may alſo be ſtopped with caſks filled up with litter, which will be more convenient to remove, ſhould it be neceſſary. Thoſe gates which are intended for the paſſage in and out, are to be blocked up at night, or when thought neceſſary, in ſuch a manner as to be eaſily opened again: the beſt way is to uſe an abatis, viz. whole trees with their branches, the ends of which muſt be cut ſharp, and a little burned to make them harder; thus prepared, the

Digitized by Google

the trees are brought to the gate-way, the branches outwards, and the trunks forming a croſs one upon the other, and made faſt by ſtrong wooden hooks driven in the ground, in order to prevent the enemy from dragging them off; apple trees are preferable.

It is very proper to dig traverſes behind ſuch gates as may be uſed occaſionally, for ſhould the enemy ſucceed in forcing them, he may be ſtopped there.

If there be any towers over the gates, they muſt be ſufficiently occupied in caſe of an attack, and their acceſs well defended; a large quantity of ſtones and heavy blocks of wood muſt alſo be at hand to throw upon ſuch as may attempt to make themſelves maſters of the gate, and other heaps placed at certain diſtances, in caſe the enemy ſhould offer to ſtorm; where the wall be fallen, the breach muſt be filled up by an abatis, or with ſtrong pieces of timber planted cloſe to each other, and deeply ſunk into the ground.

Should there be in the town, a caſtle or a large church, ſomewhat aſunder from the houſes, it may be uſed as a citadel for the laſt place of retreat; the ſtreets at ſome diſtance around it muſt be ſtopped with traverſes and *trous de loups*. and every poſſible obſtacle thrown in the enemy's way, to embaraſs his purſuit through the ſtreets. Breaſt-works muſt be erected acroſs the meeting of

Digitized by Google

of ſtreets, in order to diſpute every inch of ground in the town, even after the walls have been forced. If you be in an enemy's country where you ſuſpect treaſon, you can fill up ſome houſes, near the principal iſſues, with ſtraw and other materials that will eaſily catch fire, and threaten the inhabitants that you are reſolved to burn the town, ſhould the enemy ſucceed in ſurpriſing you. This preſerved me once during the American war. Immediately after the taking of Trenton by the enemy, Colonel Donop, who had occupied Montholy with the 42d regiment, two Heſſian grenadier battalions, and the yager company under my command, was obliged to quit precipitately this poſt, in order to gain the paſſage of Croſwick, which ſecured his communication with Prince Town, where General Grant was with his corps. In order to ſecure his march, at leaſt on one ſide, the colonel, who had every reaſon to expect that the enemy would moleſt his retreat, ordered me to remain in Montholy with ninety men, Highlanders, Heſſian grenadiers and riflemen, and to defend myſelf to the laſt man, or at leaſt to hold out till midnight. I unroofed the two bridges upon the river which went through the town, but which was fordable a little higher up; for the laſt reſource I aſſembled the inhabitants, ordered every one to remain in his houſe, and ſwore that if I were attacked

Digitized by Google

tacked by the enemy, or they ſhould offer to riſe againſt me, I would before leaving it ſet the town on fire; I knew that the greater part of the inhabitants were diſaffected, and had concealed arms and ammunition: my threats ſucceeded, the Americans, who were afraid to ſee this commercial town reduced to aſhes, did not attack me; I left the place after twelve o'clock, and the next day, without any accident, joined Colonel Donop at Croſſwick. Though all theſe rules be ever ſo excellent for the defence of a poſt, they will be of no effect, if the interior ſervice of the garriſon be not carried on with regularity and vigilance; and of courſe that ſentries and guards are always watchful, and frequent rounds take place at uncertain hours; falſe alarms muſt be given, eſpecially during the night, to try the alertneſs of officers and men, to fall in, each into his proper ſtation: thoſe who arrive firſt, muſt be publicly praiſed, and the late or ſlow, puniſhed; beſides the main and other guards, a piquet of a captain, two ſubalterns, and a hundred men muſt be always in readineſs, as alſo an officer with fifty dragoons; the piquet officers muſt by turns viſit the guards and ſentries at different hours, for rounds made at certain fixed hours are of no ſervice; the commander may however point out to the officers of the piquet the hours they muſt go their rounds, but this muſt

Digitized by Google

muſt not be known to the guards; he ought eſpecially, during the night, to viſit the poſts himſelf, never depend entirely upon his inferiors, and be an example of alertneſs to the garriſon.

Patroles muſt alſo be ſent towards the enemy, more eſpecially before day-break; they muſt receive accurate orders where to go, and the commander of the patrole bring back a certificate of ſome of the principal inhabitants, to prove that they have really been there, obſerving that ſuch patroles ought not to be always of the ſame number of men. For example: during the winter of 1761, in the ſeven years war, being an enſign in a detachment at Dryburg, under the command of a certain field officer of infantry, I recollect, that the patroles which went towards Stadtbergen were frequently carried off by the French, who occupied that place; a non-commiſſioned officer and ſix dragoons were regularly ſent every day, and an officer and 20 dragoons every third day, at a fixed hour: in ſpite of military etiquette, the lieutenant of the light dragoons once took the liberty to tell his commandant, if this method of patroling was not changed, he would loſe all his men one after the other; but the lieutenant-colonel, who was an older officer than the lieutenant, would not liſten to his remonſtrance; he anſwered, that it had been regulated in that manner by the field officer

Digitized by Google

officer whom he had relieved; no alteration was made, and the French continued carrying off more patroles.

After ſun-ſet, the gates muſt be ſhut, and never be opened during night, without the commandant's permiſſion; and even then, the guard muſt previouſly be turned out, and a reconnoitring party with an officer muſt deſcend the wall upon a ladder, which ought to be in readineſs for that purpoſe; nor are the gates to be opened in the morning before the return of the patroles which have been ſent out to aſcertain that the enemy have not approached; in foggy weather they muſt always remain ſhut, as alſo when intelligence is received that the enemy be in motion; and in this caſe, the guards muſt be doubled, and frequent patroles ſent towards the enemy, though he be at a great diſtance. For inſtance: during the expedition of January, 1761, the hereditary prince intended to carry Fritzlar by a *coup de main*; Captain Iſedom, of the Pruſſian black huſſars, who had the advance guard of the prince's corps, ruſhed by noon ſo near to the caſtle gate of Fritzlar, that the French had hardly time to ſhut the gate. 2dly, During the attack of the Auſtrian army upon the Pruſſian corps of General Fink at Maxen, the former had occupied Dipholſwalda: this poſt was very important, as it covered their rear, and the officer

Digitized by Google

ficer who commanded in it ought to have been particularly vigilant; but on the contrary, he ſuffered the duty to be carried on very negligently; for the Pruſſian Colonel Kleiſt, on his return from an inroad in Bohemia, entered the diſtrict of Dipholſwalda, without General Seckendorf having the leaſt information of it; the then Lieutenant Kumpel, ſupported by a captain and 100 men of Corbiere's battalion, which belonged to Colonel Kleiſt's corps, and a field piece, ſurpriſed with 50 men the Auſtrian guard of 100 at the gate, killed and took many priſoners, and entered the town with the fugitives.

In ſuch important occurrences, the beſt plan would be to ſend always a ſmall party with an officer or a non-commiſſioned officer after the uſual patroles, and eſpecially thoſe which go out at day-break; theſe parties muſt proceed ſlowly on the ſame road as the patroles in front, and frequently halt and liſten; ſhould they hear a firing, they muſt inſtantly communicate this or any other intelligence to the commandant, for if the patroles do their duty, they cannot be carried off by the enemy without a ſhot; but if every thing appear quiet, the parties ſhould halt about half way, and wait for the return of the patrole in front, and the arrival of the croſs patrole: ſuppoſing that the enemy have carried off the firſt patrole, the parties and croſs patroles will at leaſt

Digitized by Google

leaſt diſcover and announce the approach of the enemy. Had General Meyer uſed theſe precautions at his poſt of Weiſtritz, whilſt the King of Pruſſia was beſieging Olmutz, that truly great general would not have been ſurpriſed by General St. Ignon; for although he received intelligence from Field Marſhal Keith about the movements of the Auſtrians, he remained in perfect ſecurity, ſeeing every thing quiet before his poſt at day-break, and having his patroles actually out towards the enemy, who in fact had carried them off.

If there be a poſt-office in the place, the poſtmaſter muſt be forbidden to deliver letters, or furniſh any perſon with horſes without your permiſſion; an officer muſt beſides be placed on duty in the houſe, to open all letters and ſend you ſuch as may contain intereſting intelligence. All travellers without exception, notwithſtanding their paſſports, muſt be thoroughly examined; fairs and public amuſements or ceremonies muſt be forbidden, for under that cover, many a poſt has been ſurpriſed.

In order to guard againſt ſurpriſals, you muſt procure ſpies among the inhabitants, eſpecially thoſe who live near the enemy, they will give you early intelligence of his motions; you can alſo (particularly if you have reaſons to ſuſpect an attack) place at night ſome ſmall poſts around the

Digitized by Google

the place; the men on this duty muſt be acquainted with a certain ſignal which they are to make for procuring immediate admittance into the place, ſhould they have intelligence to communicate in the night-time; for inſtance, they muſt ſtrike their firelocks with the hand a certain number of ſtrokes, or cough ſo many times, obſerving that thoſe ſignals muſt be changed for every party that go out a ſcouting; the guards at the gates muſt alſo be very attentive to obſerve people going in and out, and ſtop ſuch as appear ſuſpicious, or ſtrangers.

If the guards on the ſteeple perceive a number of waggons or troops at a diſtance, ſhould they approach from any other ſide than that from which you might expect the enemy, and the colour of the clothing of the troops induce you to conclude that they be friends, the gates muſt however be inſtantly ſhut, and an officer ſent out with a few men to reconnoitre; the officer muſt at a certain diſtance call out halt! and ſhould the waggons be laden or covered, they muſt be carefully ſearched as well as the conductors, in order to aſcertain that no men are concealed in the waggons, and that the conductors are unarmed; troops muſt alſo be ordered to halt at a diſtance, and the reconnoitring officer deſire their commander to approach alone, and if he obey, conduct him into the town; ſhould it

Digitized by Google

be an enemy, the officer muſt order his men to fire, and all make off as well as they can.

If your poſt or a neighbouring one have been alarmed by the enemy, be doubly on your guard. For inſtance, in the winter of 1777, when part of the Engliſh army under Lord Cornwallis was cantoned in and about New Brunſwick, in the province of Jerſey, the Americans for two days ſucceſſively alarmed the poſts of Ponentown and Piſcataway, and on the third fell upon my poſt at day-break, during a thick fog: the patrole which I had ſent out before day-break was already returned, and had perceived nothing; but as the fog began with the dawn, I ſent another patrole out, and remained under arms: this patrole had hardly marched a hundred paces when they met the enemy, who was repulſed with loſs, and purſued to his own quarters by the prompt aſſiſtance of Captain Wreeden and his company.

An exact compliance with theſe rules will render it almoſt impoſſible that the enemy ſhould ſurpriſe you, or even approach unperceived; however, ſhould you be attacked in a poſt which you are ordered to maintain, honour muſt be preferred to life, and the poſſeſſion of the poſt dearly ſold to the enemy: in ſuch a circumſtance, I adviſe the commanding officer to aſk no advice from his inferiors, liſten to no repreſentation, and to perſevere in the reſolution he may

Digitized by Google

may have formed: a glorious death is certainly preferable to life at the price of ever ſo good a capitulation; thus in the campaign of 1758, the Pruſſian Colonel Meyer defended Marienberg in the Erzgeburge with his free corps, againſt 3000 Auſtrians; and with the ſame gallantry did the Britiſh Colonel Cruger defend, in 1781, the poſt of Ninety Six, in South Carolina, againſt 7000 Americans, commanded by General Green, who was forced to retire with a ſevere loſs, after an unſucceſsful attempt.

Artifice may alſo compenſate for inferiority of ſtrength; extraordinary meaſures will frequently prove the beſt: for inſtance, after the battle of Hochkirch, which gave the Auſtrians the whole of Saxony, excepting Dreſden and Torgau, the Pruſſian Colonel Grohlman, with a garriſon battalion and a ſmall detachment of huſſars, occupied Torgau; General Haddick, informed of the weakneſs of the garriſon, attempted to carry the town; upon the approach of the enemy, Colonel Grohlman felt himſelf greatly embarraſſed, having no other defence than a feeble entrenchment, which he had not even men enough to line ſufficiently; he acquainted immediately with his ſituation General Wedel, who commanded the advance guard of Count Dohna's army, which had already advanced as far as Hertzberg on its march to the relief of Saxony; but Hertz-

Digitized by Google

berg being ſix leagues diſtant from Torgau, the latter might eaſily have been carried before any ſuccour could have arrived: the Pruſſian colonel took his reſolution inſtantly, unable to reſiſt by force, he applied to artifice, and with 300 men and his huſſars advanced as far as the large pond, towards General Haddick, who, acquainted with the march of Count Donah's army, and ſtruck by the boldneſs of the Pruſſians, concluded that General Wedel was already arrived at Torgau; he retreated accordingly, and Torgau was preſerved: this example proves, that a truly great mind will find reſources in the moſt deſperate ſituation.

The poſition of the winter cantonments may alſo require that certain poſts ſhould be occupied, which are badly calculated for defence. For example, Gelnhauſen, which is upon the route between Hanau and Fulda, is ſurrounded by a good wall with a kind of rampart walk on it, and from which you command an extenſive view of part of the country towards the South, Eaſt, and Weſt; only the northerly ſide is ſurrounded by mountains, from one of which called the Durich, the town, built as an amphitheatre at its foot, is commanded in ſuch a manner, that from the top you can fire with ſmall arms upon all the ſtreets.

Suppoſing that the enemy's army have taken their

Digitized by Google

their quarters on the left bank of the Mayn, and occupy Frankfort, Aſchaffenburg, and Hanau, the chain of the opponent army extend from Gieſen to Butzbach, Friedberg, Aſſenheim, Ordenberg, and Budingen to Gelnhauſen; in this caſe, Gelnhauſen muſt be occupied, and in order to guard againſt inſults from the enemy, (being on account of the rigour of the ſeaſon obliged to put your men under cover) the only reſource will be to erect upon the Durich a redoubt, garriſoned with a hundred men and two pieces of artillery; thus you may eaſily defend the place, as the Durich commands all the other mountains; there being plenty of wood in the neighbourhood, a guard-houſe may be built of whole trees, with a fire-place, to preſerve the men from exceſſive cold: had Colonel Rall erected a redoubt for 200 men with the 6 field pieces of his three regiments upon the road of Maidenhead to Trentown, at the top of the height, from whence he could have commanded the whole place, General Waſhington would never have attempted to attack him, as the ſucceſs of the enterprize depended upon its being performed expeditiouſly: but the brave Colonel Rall was deaf to the repeated intelligence he received of the deſign of the enemy, who being aware of this, ſeized the opportunity, and ſucceeded.

If a poſt muſt be occupied, though incapable

Digitized by Google

of defence, the commanding officer ſhould conſider his ſafety as depending entirely upon ſpies, frequent patroles, and uncommon vigilance; ſhould the enemy approach with a ſuperior force, he will be enabled to withdraw at a moment's notice, for the intention of the enemy is obviouſly to carry the garriſon, and not to occupy a bad poſt himſelf. For example, during the winter quarters of 1760, General Luckner with 3000 men, chiefly light troops, was ſent to Heiligenſtadt, in order to cover the left flank of Duke Ferdinand's quarters, and to ſecure the communication with the Pruſſian army; this town is ſo completely ſurrounded with mountains, that every iſſue is a long defilé; the Duke of Broglies reſolved to carry the poſt, and appointed for that expedition part of the garriſon of Göttingen, and ſome of the troops upon the Werra; the French obſerved ſuch a ſecrecy on their march, that General Luckner was not aware of it until the morning of the 23d of December, and when he ſaw them, he was already cut off from Nordheim, Duderſtadt, and Lindau; having no retreat left but upon Witzenhauſen, he reſolved to take this road, though it led towards the enemy's quarters, and was ſo fortunate in his eſcape, that he loſt only 34 men, who were ſlow in quitting the town; he took a poſition near the place upon a height about the Sharfenſtein, from

Digitized by Google

from whence his artillery fired upon the French, who did not purſue him, and he retired upon Worbis.

SECTION IV.

Of Reconnoitring.

RECONNOITRING the enemy is one of the moſt difficult duties in war. The motives for reconnoitring are various. A partiſan is often ſent out to examine a ſtrong place or poſt, or the acceſs of the enemy's camp; or the general may wiſh to reconnoitre ſuch himſelf, and takes with him thence a partiſan, as an eſcort, expecting that he has already ſome knowledge of the country. This duty requires great ſkill, and particularly a keen eye.

If you have to reconnoitre in open countries, the detachment which is employed ſhould conſiſt of cavalry, ſurported by infantry.

Should the country be ſo hilly and interſected that you cannot approach the enemy with cavalry, infantry muſt be employed, and the cavalry poſted behind them in the open places, in order, that ſhould the infantry be preſſed upon by the enemy, they may be ready to ſup-

Digitized by Google

port them. The main point is, in ſuch a caſe, not to advance to the enemy with the whole detachment at once, but divide it into two, three, four, or even ſix parties, one of which may ſupport the other: you ought to regulate your meaſures according to the nature of the ground, and the length of your march. As you approach the enemy, every defilé or croſs road which you leave behind, and which you are not perfectly acquainted with, muſt be occupied.

Thus, if you be repulſed by the enemy, you fall back from one detachment to another, whereby the enemy in his purſuit will be embarraſſed, finding that your force encreaſes every ſtep which you retreat. As you can ſeldom go farther when reconnoitring an enemy's piquet, than to drive back his out-poſts, you require only ſo many men as are neceſſary to ſupport the reconnoitring party. In order to arrive in front of the enemy's out-poſts at day-break, much is not hazarded in ſuch caſes, if you obſerve ſecrecy on your march; for before the out-poſts are driven back, and other detachments arrive, you may have completed your intentions: but as the enemy will alſo employ every means to hinder you from approaching too near, and will fall upon you with force as ſoon as he perceives you, it is well to obſerve the before-mentioned rule, and divide your detachment into two, three, four,

Digitized by Google

four, or ſix parties, leaving them at certain diſtances from each other, and approach the enemy only with one, in order to have a reſource: with one of theſe parties attack the enemy's out-poſts reſolutely, drive them back, make your obſervations, and retire back again as quick as poſſible. You muſt not ſpare yourſelf, but advance as near as poſſible to the object which you wiſh to examine, by which means much may be ſeen in war.

I always followed this rule in the American war, and never confined my reconnoitring to the worded orders, to accompliſh to the utmoſt what was entruſted to me; but I always went farther, in order to ſee or do nothing by halves, by which I often experienced, how much a man may perform who takes a pleaſure in his duty: for the officer, who will only do that in war which he is ordered, and will hazard no more, eſpecially when leading a light corps, does ſcarcely any thing, and can by no means be reckoned an uſeful officer.

Inaſmuch as the art of reconnoitring requires ſkill, toil, and precaution, when occaſion requires you to force your way, ſo the like ſkill, as good an eye, and as much toil are required from thoſe who are ſent out to reconnoitre certain roads, paſſes, and rivers. In theſe caſes, you muſt go as far as you can, and obſerve every thing accurately.

Digitized by Google

rately. For inſtance: whether cavalry, artillery and baggage can come along the road eaſily, or with difficulty; whether the ground be hard or ſwampy; if the road lead through much wood, how broad it is, how many defilées you meet with, and on which ſide they are commanded; how wide the rivers are, whether their banks be high, if grown over with buſhes, and which bank is the higheſt; how many fords in the neighbourhood, and how deep, whether the ground and bottom be hard or muddy, how many bridges, whether of ſtone or wood, and how broad. You muſt not for this depend upon the intelligence of one or two inhabitants in the neighbourhood, but queſtion many; nor aſk them whether you can paſs, but only ſignify that you muſt paſs, be the conſequence what it may. Nor muſt you queſtion the rich inhabitants, for they will always repreſent the roads worſe than they really are, in order to prevent a viſit into their country: you muſt examine yourſelf, by which you can give a ſatisfactory report, and not expoſe yourſelf to be found inaccurate. For I have experienced in the American war, when the inhabitants of the country have deſcribed roads as very bad, which have been found upon trial equal to the beſt high roads.

In order to render this rule more clear, I will here give an example, reſpecting the reconnoitring

Digitized by Google

tring of a ſtrong poſt. Suppoſing, that I was ſent with a corps from Gelnhauſen to protect an engineer, who is ordered to reconnoitre the fortifications of Hanau. As it is very advantageous, eſpecially when reconnoitring fortified places, to take priſoners, in order to get intelligence of the garriſon, and the interior ſituation of the fortreſs, it muſt however be done by the reconnoitring party with as much circumſpection as haſte.

The corps conſiſts of two companies of rifle-men of 450, two light infantry companies of the ſame number, and two ſquadrons of light cavalry of 456. Suppoſing it to be the ſeaſon, when the day begins to dawn about five, and night begins about eight o'clock; the road is five long leagues; we will ſet off from Gelnhauſen at ten o'clock at night; 100 cavalry and 100 rifle-men, conducted by an able officer, march to Meerholz, Neuhaſlau, and Rodenbach.

This detachment, as ſoon as it has paſſed Neuhaſlau, ſends an officer with 10 rifle-men and 10 cavalry to occupy Röckinger bridge, and ſome rifle-men ſteal into the village and get intelligence when the laſt patroles of the enemy were there, how ſtrong they are in general, and how often they come from Hanau; all of which the officer reports to his commander.

As ſoon as this detachment is arrived at the

iſſue

Digitized by Google

iſſue of Rodenbach's Wood, 50 cavalry, and as many rifle-men, remain here, in order to ſecure the retreat of thoſe who go towards Hanau. The commander of the latter approaches hereupon with 40 cavalry, and as many rifle-men, through Bulau, as near the fortreſs as poſſible, ſends a ſcouting patrole towards Lehnhof, and endeavours to get intelligence of the enemy. As ſoon as it is day, he ſhews himſelf, in order to draw the attention of the town upon that ſide: if the enemy have occupied the Lambois bridge, he endeavours to ſurprize the enemy's piquet, or to diſperſe them. He ſends ſome truſty yagers as near to the wall as poſſible, to fire upon the ſentries, or whatever may appear.

As the reconnoitering party muſt take place on the right bank of the Kintzig, the commander of the corps, together with the engineer, takes his march over Langenſelbold; a company of light infantry remain here behind, who place themſelves in the gardens, which lie upon a height towards Ruckingen; 200 cavalry remain at Ruckingen, and the ſecond company of light infantry remain in the coppice of Ruckingen. The commander of the corps ſends three or four ſmall parties into this country, each of which muſt conſiſt of only four or ſix well mounted and truſty cavalry, who will advance to Neuhof, Kintzingerhof, Fiſherhof, the Faſanerie, and Williamſbad

Digitized by Google

Williamſbad, in order to take any of the ſoldiers or officers of the garriſon priſoners, who certainly will be upon theſe heights over night.

The commander of the whole takes then the remaining rifle company, together with the remaining 156 cavalry, and approaches the town under cover of the night, through the Gehegewald, as near as poſſible, in order that the engineer can begin his reconnoitring at day-break.

As every thing that comes out of the town muſt come through the Mühlſchanzenthor, or over the Kintz bridge, in front of the ſuburbs, it is only neceſſary to keep a good eye upon theſe two iſſues. Should the enemy come out of the town with his cavalry, or a great part of his garriſon, the two detachments having much wood behind them, have little to fear. The detachment which approached the town through the Bulau, can retreat from wood to wood, as far as Altenhaſslau. The detachment, which advanced over Ruckingen, retires from poſt to poſt; and as it will be thrice reinforced, on a road of only two ſmall leagues, the enemy will hardly hazard much, but be content, by the aſſurance, that the detachment not being able to aſcertain the object, has retreated again. If he preſs too cloſely upon one of the two detachments, he muſt alſo hazard being taken in the rear by the other; and as both detachments have a communication with each

Digitized by Google

each other by the different bridges, which are between Langelſelbold and Hanau, over the Kintzing, he may be completely cut off from Hanau.

The method of reconnoitring, which I have here propoſed for inſtruction, may be alſo employed uſefully againſt poſts and camps; nothing is hazarded by it, whilſt the rear is covered in the neighbourhood and at a farther diſtance, and the retreat ſafe.

SECTION V.

Of Surpriſals.

THE word ſurpriſal, properly ſpeaking, ſhould not be known in war; and if an officer would only conſider the offenſive meaning attached to it, ſuch occurrences would very ſeldom, if ever, happen. For to ſay an officer has been ſurpriſed, is the ſame as ſaying he has loſt by his own negligence, ignorance, or obſtinacy the honor, liberty, or lives of himſelf and many men who were entruſted to him; and can an officer, who has cauſed this misfortune by his own fault, be more injured in the opinion of the world than when he be ſo ſpoken of? Notwithſtanding the great care which an officer is forced to take in the

Digitized by Google

the execution of his truſt when on a poſt in the field, yet we find inſtances of this kind in every war; for he who hazards a ſurpriſal will ſeldom fail; and thoſe ſurpriſals, which are looked upon as impoſſible by the common run of men, turn out in general the moſt ſucceſsful.

Though ſurpriſals require ſo much prudence, ſkill, expedition and ſecrecy in the execution, yet they are ſo far uſeful in war, not only for the actual advantage, but becauſe they depreſs the enemy: if you will hazard ſuch an attempt upon the enemy, the principal point is to have an accurate knowledge of the country. You muſt have good ſpies and guides; the firſt are neceſſary to procure intelligence of the enemy's ſtrength, how his poſts are ſituated, and in what manner, whether the duty be carried on negligently, where and how far his patroles go, how ſtrong, how often they go out, how far the next poſt is diſtant from that which you intend to ſurpriſe, what kind of a man the commander is, whether he be of an eaſy temper, or addicted to diſſipation. The guides are neceſſary, in order to conduct you by by-ways to the enemy, and ſhew you accurately every acceſs by which you can cut off the enemy, and completely ſurround him. For if ſuch enterpriſes only half ſucceed, or wholly miſcarry, you make yourſelf ridiculous in the eyes of the enemy, and loſe the confidence of

Digitized by Google

of your men. For inſtance; in the ſurpriſe of Baumbridge in the ſpring of 1777, the Engliſh cavalry had croſſed the river Rariton, a quarter of a league above the place where they ought to have done ſo, in order to cut off the Americans from the paſs, which was the reaſon that General Lincoln himſelf, and inſtead of 200, 800 men were not taken priſoners. The ſame fault was committed in the ſurpriſe of the corps under the Marquis de la Fayette in the ſpring of 1778, near Germantown. In ſucceſsful or unſucceſsful expeditions, it is neceſſary to be acquainted with more than one road, that you may retire by the ſhorteſt. Night is the beſt time for ſuch *coups de main*, it ſpreads terror among the enemy when he finds himſelf attacked on all ſides; he cannot diſcover the motions, he cannot diſtinguiſh the true from the falſe attack, he beholds every thing double through fear, and trees and hedges will at this time be taken for men. I have once been an eye-witneſs of a falſe alarm. One can hardly conceive how much fear works upon men juſt rouſed from ſleep. It was in the campaign of Penſylvania when General Howe wiſhed to croſs the Chulkhill after the battle of Brandywine River; the Heſſian and Anſpachs' yager corps ſtood in a wood not far from French Creek; they had the rear, and lay ready with their arms to march on the firſt ſignal. A few ſhots

Digitized by Google

ſhots were fired by the piquets, which gave occaſion to the inhabitants of a neighbouring plantation to ſcream out aloud; at once, a voice cried out "run, we are ſurpriſed!" The whole corps diſperſed in every direction; a whole hour was employed to reaſſemble the men, and they could hardly be convinced that all this had been only a falſe alarm.

A miſt, a ſtrong wind with rain, or a fall of ſnow, are the opportunities which may contribute to your ſucceſs in a ſurpriſe, for patroles are ſeldom found upon the roads in very bad weather, as one may ſuppoſe that it may hinder the enemy from approaching. A thick miſt will favor your approach; and when hard rain and high wind drive in the faces of the ſentries, they put down their heads, forget themſelves often, and turn their backs to the rain and wind, by which you may eaſily ſteal to them, and ſtab them unawares. I know that I have often come to the moſt dangerous poſts, where the ſentries muſt have known that death or hard captivity would be the puniſhment for the leaſt negligence, and have approached ſo near a ſentry, that I have ſtood cloſe to his front without being diſcovered. In ſuch weather you cannot viſit your own poſts too often.

If you receive intelligence that a detachment of the enemy are about to take a certain poſt in

Digitized by Google

the neighbourhood, or you believe from his ſituation that he will and muſt occupy a poſt, gain his rear, and as ſoon as it is night fall upon him. In this caſe you may, if the country be much interſected, ruin whole regiments with a handful of men. In this manner a French partiſan, with 150 light infantry of Soubiſe's corps, ſurpriſed in the ſeven years war near Werle, four ſquadrons of huſſars and a battalion of light infantry of the allied army. It was in Auguſt in the campaign of 1761. The then hereditary prince, now Duke of Brunſwick, ſtood between Hamm and Werle, near Bockum, which place lay in front of the prince's left wing. Two leagues in front of the prince lay Werle, a town ſurrounded by a dry ditch, and a wall; the French had occupied Lüne and the caſtle of Kappenberg, and were patroling Werle. The Prince of Brunſwick detached a colonel of huſſars with his regiment, and a battalion of light infantry to Werle, in order to obſerve the French in and near Lüne. The commander of this corps took poſt cloſe to the town, placed his out-poſts immediately on his arrival, which commanded the road towards Lüne and Kappenberg, and ſent out proper patroles; the huſſars kept ſaddled in the day-time, and bridled in the night; the free battalion ſtood ſo near the town that they placed their arms againſt the wall, but notwithſtanding all this precaution, the

detachmen_t

Digitized by Google

detachment was ſurpriſed the firſt night: the French officer, who commanded in Lüne, as ſoon as he heard that Werle was about to be occupied, took 150 men, marched over Kappenberg, and placed himſelf between Bockum and Werle in the wood, where he waited until night. A heavy ſtorm began about midnight, by favor of which he approached the enemy as near as poſſible. He divided his detachment in two parties, one of which was to attack the huſſars, the other the light infantry. Having fired, he ruſhed with charged bayonets upon the battalion, killed many, carried off what he could, and retreated the ſhorteſt way from Werle to Lüne: as ſoon as the prince received this intelligence, he purſued the French with ſome cavalry, but they had too ſhort a journey, and were not to be overtaken.

In the ſame manner an American party was ſurpriſed at mid-day, not far from Glouceſter Church in Virginia. Colonel Simcoe, who was ordered to cover a foraging party in this country, received intelligence from a Negro, juſt as the foraging was completed, that an American detachment had come toWard's Plantation, a league and half from the abovementioned church; and the Negro added, that he had not perceived that they had placed any out-poſts. Hereupon the Colonel took 100 cavalry, in order to fall upon the enemy before he had time to collect himſelf,

Digitized by Google

and ordered me to follow him with the yagers and his light infantry as quick as poſſible. We found every thing as the Negro had informed us; but to the enemy's good luck, and our diſappointment, two American dragoons were marauding, who diſcovered the colonel with his cavalry, gallopped back, and gave an alarm, whereupon all fled into the neighbouring thicket, and thus we could only take an officer, five horſes, and ſeven men. But as their horſes were not ſaddled, and they had not time to take away their arms, we ordered the ſaddles to be burnt, and the arms to be broken to pieces.

The firſt example proves, that one ought never to occupy a poſt before the whole country is thoroughly ſearched, to be aſſured that no party of the enemy lay concealed in the neighbourhood. One ſhould alſo always ſecure the rear, and endeavour to preſerve a communication with the corps which is behind; for the officer at Werle could have avoided in two different ways the misfortune which befel him, and the chagrin which he muſt have felt for ever after. As Werle is ſurrounded with a wall, and is calculated for defence, he might have gone with his whole detachment into this place, and have obſerved the enemy by the detachments which he ſhould have ſent to Lüne and Kappenberg, and have kept open a communication with the prince by patroles;

Digitized by Google

troles; or otherwiſe he might have ſought out an advantageous poſt near the town for half of his detachment, and have placed the other half between his poſt and Bockum, in order by this means to have covered his rear; or he might have ſent his huſſars before, and have ſo poſted the battalion of light infantry, that his rear would have been covered.

The laſt example ſhews, that an officer ſhould not remain from his poſt a moment, without taking proper meaſures for his ſafety. For had not Fortune favored the American officer, his whole detachment would have been loſt.

You may alſo ſurpriſe the enemy, if you can approach near him undiſcovered. In this caſe his out-poſts ſhould be ruſhed upon, and endeavour to enter his camp at the ſame time with him. As, however, ſuch enterpriſes ſhould be undertaken with the greateſt expedition, only cavalry can be employed, unleſs the country be ſo interſected by wood and hills, that only light infantry can be uſed. In the campaign of South Carolina in 1780, Colonel Tarleton with 200 cavalry ſurpriſed at mid-day 2000 Americans under General Sumpter. The Engliſh ruſhed upon the Americans with ſuch fury that the latter had not time to take up their arms, which they had piled together before their huts. Had Colonel Armand when he ſurpriſed the yager piquet at

Digitized by Google

mid-day, near Courtland's Plantation, in the province of New York, gone through the ravine which ſeparated the corps from the mountain, upon which the right wing of the piquet was poſted, he might have retaliated upon the yager corps in the ſame manner, for before we had perceived the event in the camp he might have been in the middle of us.

One may alſo keep the enemy in conſtant alarm in order to lull him into a falſe ſecurity, and then at once fall upon him. This generally ſucceeds beſt about noon, becauſe the enemy conſiders himſelf as moſt ſecure at this time, and thoſe who have watched the preceding night are at reſt. The horſes are fed at that hour, the officers conſider more their conveniency, ſome are at dinner, and amongſt thoſe corps, where the ſevereſt diſcipline is not practiſed, many may be found either out of the camp feaſting with their friends, or in the neighbouring villages. I know, that in many different Engliſh corps two officers were ſeldom to be found in camp at noon hour. The American partiſans Otterndorf and Butler choſe this time two days running during the winter cantonments at Brunſwick, in order to ſurpriſe me; but they were received contrary to their expectations, and driven back from both attempts.

If on the march to the enemy there be a defilé or

Digitized by Google

or a river to paſs, or you leave a bridge behind you, and you are forced to return by it, occupy ſuch a paſs with light infantry, to ſecure you from not being cut off on a retreat. For inſtance, ſuppoſing you would ſurpriſe the enemy in the country of Hanau, near Seligenſtadt or Babenhauſen, and croſs on your march the Mayn near Steinheim or Rumpenheim, you muſt occupy the caſtle of Steinheim, or in the other the neareſt gardens and houſes of Rumpenheim. Or, ſuppoſing you would ſurpriſe the enemy from Windecken, in or near Friedberg, you muſt occupy the bridge over the Wetter, near the convent of Ilbenſtadt. Light infantry may alſo ſurpriſe cavalry when quartered in open places as well as in interſected countries. In the firſt inſtance, you ſteal at night time as near the enemy as poſſible, and fire a volley, whereby the horſes will certainly ſtart and prevent the riders from mounting. Upon this fall immediately upon the enemy, kill, or take priſoners, as many as you can, and retreat as quick as poſſible. In the laſt inſtance, if you can ſteal ſecretly into the cavalry's cantonments, divide your detachment into different parties, one-half of which muſt endeavour to make themſelves maſter of the ſtables, whilſt the others ſeize the men. For example, in the American war, in 1778, Count Pulawſky quartered in one of the plantations near Eckharbour,

Digitized by Google

in the province of New Jerſey, in order to cover this country againſt the landing and pillage of the Engliſh privateers. Major Ferguſon, one of the moſt meritorious and braveſt officers of the Engliſh army, croſſed from Long Iſland with a party of Scots, landed at Eckharbour in the night-time in the rear of Pulawſky's quarters, killed all the horſes and many men, and took the greateſt part of the latter priſoners along with him.

You muſt never forget in ſurpriſes to cover the ſide, whence the enemy can come to aſſiſt the poſt which you intend to ſurpriſe.

With reſpect to what is to be obſerved on the march, I refer the reader to the chapter in which I have treated on ſecret marches. I will now particularly obſerve that in this inſtance, as the march is undertaken generally in the night, no flankers can be employed. The advance guard is to be quite near, before which an officer goes on foot at the diſtance of 50 paces, who muſt often ſtand ſtill, and ſhould he diſcover any men at a diſtance, muſt report it immediately. Should they be an enemy's patrole, you muſt halt in order not to be diſcovered, and endeavour to take them. Should you, however, be already diſcovered, you muſt give up your intentions immediately; every one ſhould march in the greateſt ſilence, ſmoak no tobacco, and all thoſe who are

ſubject

Digitized by Google

ſubject to coughs and colds muſt be left behind on ſuch occaſion. No horſe muſt be taken that is accuſtomed to neigh.

The following ſurpriſal, which is one of the moſt remarkable in the ſeven years war, will make the before-mentioned rules more clear to the reader, eſpecially if he will take Roſier's map of Heſſia before him. It was when the Hereditary Prince of Brunſwick ſurpriſed the French corps under General Claubiz, near Emſdorf in Upper Heſſia.

In the campaign of 1760 the allied army were placed upon the heights of Sachſenhauſen, and the French, under the Marſhal de Broglio, near Corbach. The Prince of Brunſwick was detached with a corps, in order to defeat the French corps under General Claubiz, who had advanced beyond Neuſtadt to the heights of Waſenberg in order to cut off the communication between the fortreſs of Ziegenhayn and the allied army. The prince, therefore, went off on the 14th of July at evening from Sachſenhauſen to Fritzlar, to which place ſix battalions of the army had already marched. Theſe proceeded on the 15th to Zweſten, where General Luckner joined them with his huſſars and Elliot's light dragoons, and continued the march towards Treiſa, where they received intelligence that the enemy had proceeded from Waſenberg to Emſdorf, upon which the prince

Digitized by Google

prince ordered his corps to reſt at Treiſa. On the 16th he had advanced as far as Speckſwinkel, where Major Frederick and Colonel Frytag had followed the enemy with his yagers in order to obſerve him. The prince here reconnoitred the ſituation of the enemy, and found that he had encamped advantageouſly, as Emſdorf lay in front of his right wing, and a wood covered his left.

Hereupon the prince marched off with five battalions and the yagers through the wood upon Wolferode, in order to fall upon the enemy's rear and left flank, during which General Luckner with his cavalry and an Hanoverian battalion, which the prince had ordered to remain in a valley behind Speckſwinkel, was to fall on the enemy's right wing, where the French cavalry ſtood. Both attacks ſucceeded, and the enemy, who had not received the leaſt intelligence of the prince's march, was ſurprized in his camp at midday. All that could get under arms endeavoured to make ſome reſiſtance in order to ſave the honour of the whole; but they were in too great diſorder to avoid, by any means, the unfortunate conſequences. They therefore took flight through a thicket to Laogenſtein, to which place the Hanoverian battalion of Baer purſued them; and whilſt the routed enemy turned off from the village to a neighbouring thicket, the battalion went through the village and cut them off from the

Digitized by Google

the ſtone bridge over the Ohm, at the ſame time that a part of the cavalry cut off the paſs to Amoeneburg. The Prince, not ſatisfied with this advantage, purſued the part of the enemy who endeavoured to ſave themſelves towards Schweinsberg, came up with them in and near Niederklein, where they attempted again to make a defence, but finally ſhared the fate of the others. As well ordered and conducted as this *coup de main* was, yet it would have been impoſſible to have ſucceeded in it, had the enemy often patroled, covered his rear, and not have been too ſure of ſafety. For, had he poſted one of his three infantry regiments in or near Kirchhayn, his retreat would have been ſecure over the Wehr and Ohm.

This proves how much judgment, ſkill and courage are neceſſary in ſurpriſes in the field. Moreover, thoſe which are undertaken againſt incloſed or fortified poſts are liable to far greater difficulties. In ſuch caſes you have to paſs ditches, to climb walls and ramparts, and to force open gates; you will often meet with unforeſeen obſtacles, which muſt be removed before you can attain your object; notwithſtanding by the negligence and want of dexterity of the enemy, and by money, a partiſan has opportunities to provide for the ſucceſs of the ſurpriſal of a ſtrong poſt. For example, you may by

Digitized by Google

by your ſpies and the enemy's deſerters be informed whether he be negligent in his duty, and do not attend to it with proper vigilance and precaution. You may be informed by an inhabitant, and ſhewn the acceſs to a poſt which the enemy has not ſufficiently occupied. You may have intelligence that the garriſon of a poſt is too weak to occupy it with advantage. In a word, if an officer be not avaricious, he will always find traitors or friends for ready caſh. This never failed with me in America when I wiſhed to know whether this or that inhabitant of a plantation was a king's friend or a rebel; and I well know, that for money ſervants have even betrayed their own maſters.

It is of no conſequence what means you purſue for the ſucceſs of ſurprizes; but they require truſty ſpies and guides, who will give the beſt information, and lead you by the ſafeſt and moſt covered countries to the poſt or village. If the place be ſurrounded by dry ditches, with walls or ramparts, it is neceſſary to know the depth of the ditches, and the height of the ramparts, in order to regulate the ſize of the ladders accordingly, if you wiſh to eſcalade. The ſpies and guides muſt be acquainted with the town perfectly. They muſt know the main-guard, the alarm poſts, and the ſtrength of each guard, where the cavalry and infantry have their quarters,

Digitized by Google

ters, and where the head officers live. The farther you are from the enemy, the ſucceſs of an undertaking is frequently the more certain, and the ſtronger a poſt is, the more remiſs and negligent the garriſon will probably be. For example: Colonel Donop was detached from Philadelphia, to carry the intrenched poſt of Red bank, and to cut off the communication of the garriſon of Mud Iſland and the province of New Jerſey, which was always furniſhed with proviſions from the latter province. On the 20th of October in the morning, he croſſed the Delaware not far from the town, marched to Hattenfield, where he remained the night; and though the march had not been held ſecret, we arrived on the 21ſt, at noon, ſo unexpectedly, in the neighbourhood of the enemy's poſts, that we found a quarter-maſter with ſix ſoldiers a ſmall quarter league from it, who were fetching meat from a neighbouring plantation for the garriſon, and who aſſured us, that the enemy had not the leaſt idea of our approach. Had this moment been well employed, and we had fallen immediately on our arrival upon both ſides of this poſt, as we could have approached by the help of a wood on the ſide of Philadelphia within 400 paces of it, we ſhould certainly have ſurpriſed the enemy, and by which the lives of many brave officers and ſoldiers would have been ſpared, which were loſt

Digitized by Google

loſt in the ſtorm that took place in the afternoon at four o'clock, after we had ſummoned the enemy. For our ſummons was in fact nothing more, than a warning to him to prepare for our attack.

Surpriſals frequently ſucceed, when an army retreats after a check. In general, the opponent becomes elated by his ſucceſs, and begins to look upon his enemy with contempt. The before-mentioned ſurpriſals of Trainton, Prinztown, and Stony Point, were nothing more than the natural conſequences of a contempt for the enemy. The negligence which had crept into the French army, in the Hanoverian campaign, when the allies under Duke Ferdinand drove them out of the Hanoverian territory, aroſe from the ſame cauſe, by which they were ſurprized almoſt in every poſt. I will here give an inſtructive example from this campaign: as Count Chabot was at Hoya, and received the intelligence of the approach of the allied army, he thought it impoſſible that an enemy's corps could croſs the Aller and Weſer, as both rivers were very much overflowed; but he was miſtaken, and was not well acquainted with his opponent, whoſe uncommon activity knew how to remove every obſtacle. The Hereditary Prince of Brunſwick carried on this enterprize againſt Hoya, in ſpite of every difficulty. For though he found only one

Digitized by Google

one ferry-boat, and ſome fiſhing boats, to croſs the Weſer near Barmen; and though a very heavy ſtorm aroſe at the time when he had hardly tranſported half of his corps, by which the paſſage of the remaining troops was rendered wholly impoſſible, yet he was not diſcouraged from his undertaking, but continued his route with a handful of troops towards Hoya, where he arrived at ſix o'clock in the evening. After the Prince had taken every proper meaſure for an attack, he ordered no ſhot to be fired, but all were to charge with bayonets. But near Wülzen the advanced guard met with an enemy's patrole, upon which ſome of his men fired, and thereby the approach of the Prince was diſcovered by the French. He was not, however, depreſſed by this accident, but ruſhed into the place. Meanwhile a part of the garriſon collected in the ſtreets, and defended themſelves bravely; another part fired from the houſes: Count Chabot endeavoured, as much as poſſible, to defend the bridge which led to the Caſtle, but he was driven away from it; and had not the French ſet fire to ſome houſes in this part of the town, the Count would certainly have been cut off from the Caſtle, or the allies would have entered it *pêle mêle* with them. At day-break the Count was ſummoned in the Caſtle. Seeing himſelf ſurrounded on every ſide, he requeſted a free retreat,

Digitized by Google

treat, which he obtained, from the particular generoſity of this great Prince. This example proves, how eaſily the beſt formed plan may be fruſtrated; for had not the ſoldiers of the allies advance-guard fired upon the enemy's patrole, the French would certainly have been ſurprized. In a ſurprizal, it is therefore beſt not to ſuffer the arms of the advance guard to be loaded, and particularly ſo in the night-time, in order to deprive the ſoldiers of every opportunity of firing. The Prince took this method at Zierenberg, in Heſſia, which poſt was ſurprized in ſight of the French army. The circumſtance is too inſtructive, to be omitted.

In the campaign of 1760, when the allies and the French army were ſeparated by the Dimel, the hereditary Prince of Brunſwick croſſed the river near Marburg, in the night of the 5th of September, and ſurprized this town at day-break in the ſight of the French army, Marburg covered the left flank of the army, and was occupied by the volunteers of Clermont and Dauphiné, under Brigadier Nordmann. As this enterprize required the utmoſt ſilence, the prince, to prevent any firing, would not ſuffer the arms to be loaded, for the French reſerve, under General de Muy, ſtood only half a league beyond the town. A detachment of cavalry was poſted between the enemy's army and Zierenberg, in order

Digitized by Google

order to cover the prince's enterprise on that side, and one of light infantry was sent in the country of Lahr, in order to secure the prince against the Stainville corps. Major Bülow placed himself between Zierenberg and Dürrenberg, in order to wholly cut off the enemy's retreat, and seize the fugitives. More than 300 men were killed; and Brigadier Nordmann, Colonel Comeras, 37 officers, and 417 men taken prisoners.

We will now take notice of those places, situated upon a river, where there are canals, or where water mills have a communication with the walls. For instance: Gelnhausen and Babenhausen, lying in the Wetterhau, may, by having intelligence with the inhabitants, be very easily surprised. A surprisal may also be undertaken, when you know that the enemy has bespoken workmen and forage in the neighbouring country. In the first case, a number of officers and soldiers must be dressed as peasants, each armed with a sword and pistol concealed under their clothes, and who must endeavour to approach without any noise so near the place, that at day-break they may be near the gates. They should lay themselves down on both sides of the road, and wait the moment, when the gates are opened, rush upon the guards, and seize their arms. Upon this they must endeavour to take post over the gates, and maintain it until the troops, which have been con-

Digitized by Google

cealed in the neighbourhood for a ſupport, arrive. In the ſecond caſe, drive a number of waggons, ſo laden with ſtraw or hay, that four or five men can conceal themſelves in each under the forage; two or three diſguiſed ſoldiers go with each waggon, and one with every two horſes. At a certain diſtance from the enemy's poſt, a corps of cavalry lie concealed in a thicket, or behind a height, who, if the ſcheme ſucceeds, can haſten for a ſupport. The waggons approach the poſt, and ſhould the enemy be imprudent enough to open the gates, without ſearching, the firſt is driven under the gates, to prevent their being ſhut again ſuddenly. The moment they think themſelves maſters of the gates, the diſguiſed men fall upon the guards, ſeize them, and endeavour to maintain their poſt, until the neighbouring concealed ſupport can gallop up to them. Little or nothing is hazarded by ſuch enterprizes; for ſuppoſing the enemy diſcovers the plot at the beginning, his whole attention will be employed to ſhut and defend the gates, which will give ſufficient time for the party to retire.

In the night time, you can alſo advance with a detachment of cavalry to the enemy's poſt on full gallop, and give yourſelves out at the gates for one of his own detachments, which is routed and purſued by the enemy. You eagerly requeſt

Digitized by Google

requeſt admittance from the guards, telling them, that on the contrary, you muſt fall into the hands of the enemy who are purſuing. For inſtance: in the beginning of the year 1632, Duke Bernhard Von Weymar ſurpriſed Manheim in this manner: he took 500 Swediſh cavalry, who galloped to the gates at midnight. They gave themſelves out for an imperial regiment, who were routed in the neighbourhood by the Swedes, and were purſued. Upon this preſſing repreſentation, the officer on duty ordered the gates to be opened. As ſoon as the Swedes came up to the guards, they cut them down. The garriſon, awakened by the firing and noiſe, attempted to haſten to their rendezvous, but as the Swedes had already ſpread themſelves in parties in every ſtreet, they were cut down one after the other as they arrived. Meanwhile, however, a part of the garriſon had collected and prepared for a defence: but Duke Von Weymar now arrived with a part of his infantry, got over the walls, and ordered the men to advance on all ſides, by which, in a ſhort time, he was maſter of the whole town. Count Maravalla, a Spaniſh general, who commanded the garriſon, being exchanged, was publicly beheaded at Heidelberg.

It is alſo eaſy to ſurprize an enemy's poſt, if acquainted with ſome of the principal inhabitants of the place, and you know that the com-

Digitized by Google

mander is fond of pleaſure. In this caſe, make an appointment with one of your friends, to invite a large party on ſuch a day, at your own expence, in which he muſt promote dancing and hard drinking, during which you make your attempt.

The great Elector, Frederic William, ſurpriſed in this manner the Swedes at Rhatenau, in the war of 1675. He ſallied out of Franconia with his army, and haſtened to the aſſiſtance of his hereditary poſſeſſions, which were in the hands of the Swedes: but in order to conceal his approach from the enemy, he ordered, as ſoon as he arrived at Magdeburg, the gates to be ſhut and made faſt, and detached General Doerfling to ſurprize Rhatenau. The general, an hour before day-break, arrived, undiſcovered, in front of the town; gave himſelf out for a Swediſh party, who had been routed by the Brandenburgians, and being purſued by them, requeſted admittance. This being granted immediately, he cut down the guards, and took poſſeſſion of the town. The Swediſh officers having been liberally entertained the preceding evening by a nobleman of the town, (which entertainment had been previouſly concerted by him and the Elector) had no ſooner awoke in the morning, than they were either killed, or taken priſoners with their ſoldiers.

The

Digitized by Google

The enemy may alſo be ſurpriſed in open day, by diſguiſe. For inſtance: the hereditary Prince of Brunſwick, in the ſurpriſal of the French corps near Embſdorf, ordered the Hanoverians and Heſſians to lay aſide their coats. As theſe men now appeared white at a diſtance, the French guards took them for troops of their army, and ſuffered them to approach too near, which well thought of ſcheme contributed in a great meaſure to the fortunate ſucceſs which was the conſequence.

I will conclude the ſection with an example, which will very much illuſtrate the foregoing rules, ſince it was performed on the theatre of the ſeven years war, and of which very good charts are to be found. Take the map of the Wetterau. Suppoſing Hanau and Seeligenſtadt already in our poſſeſſion. I am at Aſchaffenburg with a corps. The enemy is maſter of Fuldaſchen and the Wetterau, and has extended his cordon from Saalmünſter, over Bierſtein, Budingen, Ortenburg, Staaten, Friedberg, &c. &c. Gelnhauſen is not yet occupied by the enemy, but expecting, as it covers the entrance into the mountains, that he will occupy it afterwards, I have engaged a miller, to inform me, as ſoon as the enemy have occupied this town, and to procure me two or three truſty citizens of Gelnhauſen, which will not be attended with much diffi-

Digitized by Google

culty, as the greateſt part of the inhabitants conſiſt of Braconniers.* As the ſucceſs of my attempt muſt depend upon the negligence of the enemy, we will ſuppoſe, that he has not occupied the mill of the before-mentioned millers, which ſtands cloſe to the walls, and through which they may be gained. The enemy have not alſo obſerved, that the Kintzing can be croſſed above the lord of the manor's gardens, (where this river is divided by an iſland) and alſo near the mill. The enemy's detachment conſiſts of 1000 infantry and 400 cavalry. In order to ſurpriſe him, I take 800 infantry, and 400 cavalry: ſuppoſing farther, that the campaign is nearly finiſhed, and the ſeaſon when it is equal day and night, at ſun ſet the gates of Aſchaffenburgh are ſhut, every one is allowed to come in the town—but for 48 hours no one is permitted to go out. The gates being ſhut, the detachment is ordered to go out, and is provided with bread and oats for two days. But as Aſchaffenburg is ten leagues from Gelnhauſen, the roads over the Speſſart not the beſt, and the country very mountainous, this march cannot be made in one night, without tiring the men too much. I march therefore the firſt night as far as the country of Irbach and Königsſhof, in Kahl-

* Men who live by killing game, in defiance of law, and even armed force.

grund,

Digitized by Google

grund, where I am only four leagues diſtant from Gelnhauſen. In this country I remain ſomewhat concealed, taking care to have water near, which, in a reſting place upon a ſecret march, ſhould be always conſidered. I remain here till the following night, and for ſecurity, place ſmall guards around me, under truſty non-commiſſioned officers, at the diſtance of about 5 or 600 paces: theſe guards muſt keep concealed, and ſeize all thoſe who paſs, and not releaſe them until the enterprize be completed. As ſoon as night begins, I proceed, regulating my march in ſuch a manner, that I arrive at midnight between the Eichhof and Eiden-Geſäſz, where I prepare for the attack, and divide the detachment as follows: 100 cavalry, and as many infantry, go off with a truſty guide. This detachment leaves Altenhaſzlau on the right; croſſes the Kintzing by the Kintzing Mill, leaves there for its ſecurity a non-commiſſioned officer and 10 yagers, in order to cover the bridge, and protect the miller and his family; takes its route over Rhode, occupies the heights, over which the road leads to Budingen, and ſo poſts itſelf, that nothing can come upon it unawares from that ſide. Should this detachment be cloſely preſſed by the enemy, it retires over the Kintzing to the mill, defends this poſt till further orders, and, if the ſurpriſal ſucceeds, he returns in this

Digitized by Google

caſe the ſame way, in order to join again the whole near Meerholz.

A captain with 100 infantry follows the firſt acroſs the Kintzing, then leaves the village of Rhode on the left, and proceeds through the vineyards to Dürich, obſerves the road, which here leads through the Kohlgrund to Bierſtein and Budingen, and cuts off the fugitives who attempt to ſave themſelves through the Holzthor. This detachment muſt make its retreat, as ſoon as it hears any firing towards Budingen or Bierſtein, to the Kintzing mill, and join the former.

A captain with 100 infantry, with a truſty guide, takes his route towards Höchſt, paſſes the bridge over the Kintzing, approaches the Heitzergate, poſts himſelf in the vineyards, in order to cut off the retreat of the enemy to Bierſtein, and obſerves at the ſame time the roads leading to this town. Should the enemy receive ſuccour from that ſide; this detachment retires round the town to the Holzthor, and takes the ſame road as the former. But as ſoon as it hears any firing towards Budingen, it muſt immediately think about its retreat, for if it cannot take the road to the Höchſter bridge, it is cut off. 50 cavalry and 100 infantry remain upon the height as a reſerve behind Altenhaſzlau. The commander of this detachment endeavours to lay together a great

Digitized by Google

great heap of wood and wet ſtraw, in order, at an appointed time, to make a fire, which may give a great ſmoke, and ſerve the detachment, that is towards Budingen, as a ſignal for a retreat. All priſoners ſhould alſo be brought to it. The remaining 400 infantry I divide into 16 diviſions, and the 250 cavalry into 10.

As ſoon as I ſuppoſe that each detachment may be arrived at its poſt, I take the ſtraight road to the lord of the manor's garden, where the cavalry in the greateſt ſilence, form up on the road that leads to Burgthor. With the infantry I croſs the Kintzing to the mill, obſerving the deepeſt ſilence during the paſſage, which muſt be effected in cloſe column of diviſions, and the men forbidden, under pain of death, to quit their diviſion, aſſuring them in the mean time that the booty will be equally divided, but thoſe who go out for plunder ſhall loſe their ſhare, and be ſeverely puniſhed.

When the two firſt diviſions have paſſed the mill, they ſteal to the Zügel-gates, ſurpriſe the guards, open the gates, paſs the bridge, ſurpriſe the guards at Zügel-haus, open the Zügel-hauſthor, obſerving to ſend information of it to the cavalry, who then gallop into the town, leaving behind them fifty men upon their poſt, in order to ſeize the fugitives that run out of the caſtle. Two diviſions haſten to the Schiffthor and to the

Roder-thor.

Digitized by Google

Roderthor, in order to make themſelves maſters of them, and thereby hinder any part of the garriſon from fleeing on that ſide. The twelve remaining diviſions paſs the Schimdtgaſſe to the lower market, one of which is ordered to ſearch out the principal officers and ſeize them. Two haſten to the upper market, to force the grand guard. The remainder diſperſe in ſmall parties through every ſtreet, and the cavalry that are already in the town, do the ſame. Theſe latter muſt now endeavour as much as poſſible, to hinder the enemy from collecting, kill or deſtroy all that oppoſe them, and not think of taking priſoners until they find they are in complete poſſeſſion of the town, though they muſt give quarter to thoſe that are unarmed.

As ſoon as the enterpriſe ſucceeds, and the garriſon is taken, all the priſoners muſt be brought together in the market-places, the commander and officers ſeparated from the common men, who muſt be ſearched, and even their knives taken from them, and be ordered to ſit down, and behave peaceably. Parties are hereupon ſent to every ſtreet to collect the horſes and baggage of the enemy, and by the diviſion of which, the common men muſt be encouraged to further good behaviour. The two detachments which have had their poſts in front of the Heitzer and Holzthor now advance, and the priſoners and booty

Digitized by Google

booty go off, under a ſufficient guard, by the road which leads over Meerholz to Hanau, being the neareſt and the moſt ſecure. A ſignal is given near Altenhaſslau to the detachment, which ſtood behind Rhode towards Budingen, and as ſoon as this arrives and the priſoners have advanced a league or a league and a half, the town may be abandoned, and you may retire likewiſe by the road over Meerholz towards Hanau, upon which the fifty cavalry and the reſerve, who are near Altenhaſslau, and have reſted during the attack, bring up the rear. But ſhould an enemy's detachment be haſtened to this neighbourhood, every means muſt be employed to expedite your retreat and to gain Meerholz. Should the enemy in his purſuit overtake you, halt with the rear upon the mountain near Meerholz, where the count's ſhooting-houſe ſtands, and face the enemy. For if you are forced to fight with the enemy, after a ſucceſsful enterpriſe, you muſt rather ſacrifice a handful of men, than loſe all that you have gained. But in order to hazard nothing by this undertaking, you may previouſly ſend on the ſame day a ſtrong detachment from Hanau, as far as the country of Newhazlau, whereby the retreat will be fully ſecured.

It may alſo happen, that a poſt, which is intended to be ſurpriſed, is reinforced, contrary to your

Digitized by Google

your expectations. If you are ſo near it, that you cannot make an honorable retreat, you muſt not be depreſſed, but attack with reſolution, as this is the only means of concealing your inferior force from the enemy. For example; In the year 1758, during the expedition which Prince Henry undertook againſt the Hildeſheimens and the people of Brunſwick, the Pruſſian Major Bork received the intelligence that 100 French were in the Hanoverian village of Eldagſen. On the 3d March, at day break, he ruſhed into the village with 120 huſſars and yagers; but inſtead of finding only 100 men there, he met with the whole Huſſar regiment of Berchiny, who ſtood ready ſaddled and bridled on the other ſide of the village; nevertheleſs he made an attack with the greateſt bravery, routed the whole regiment with his few men, cut down many and took one captain of a troop and 12 men priſoners.

SIXTH SECTION.

Of the duty of a Partiſan on the retreat of the Enemy.

THE enemy's retreat may be either wilful or forced; but neither caſe can eſcape the eye of a partiſan,

Digitized by Google

partiſan, who underſtands his duty, and poſſeſſes the neceſſary alertneſs. He ſhould place himſelf as near the enemy as poſſible, in order to follow him cloſely as ſoon as he moves. He muſt firſt of all endeavour to take ſome priſoners, in order to learn where the enemy directs his march. He muſt annoy the enemy, retard his march, and take advantage of the leaſt diſorder that he may perceive. But he muſt be circumſpect how he proceeds, for fear of loſing his corps, which, in ſuch occurrences, may very eaſily happen.

In theſe caſes there are many advantages on his ſide, ſince it may be concluded, that every ſoldier who retreats, is diſſatisfied. The common man, who cannot diſcover the ſecret intentions of the general, loſes a part of his courage as ſoon as he begins to retreat. On the contrary, thoſe who purſue the enemy are animated by the hope of gaining a large booty, their courage encreaſes by every ſtep, they look with contempt upon their enemy, who flee before them, and they conſider themſelves from this moment as ſuperior to him: ſoldiers at ſuch a time will perform all that bravery is capable of; when purſuing the enemy I never wanted volunteers, though ever ſo tired, for the thoughts of booty gave them new ſtrength. On the contrary, on a retreat, I have ſeldom dared to requeſt more duty, even from the braveſt, than they were bound to perform.

If

Digitized by Google

If the retreat of an enemy be forced, a partiſan has already half gained his point. This is a fine opportunity for him, to ſhew his ability in ſight of both armies, eſpecially if he find troops following to ſupport him in caſe of neceſſity. In this he may perform brilliant feats, if he know how to employ the moment to the greateſt advantage. In ſuch an opportunity, ſend, in the night time, ſmall parties of yagers towards the enemy's camp, who endeavour to draw ſo near to the ſentries on their hands and feet, that they can ſee the watch fire, and may ſoon diſcover when the ſentries go off, whereupon as ſoon as they obſerve this, they muſt fire upon the watch-fire, which will ſerve as a ſignal, that the enemy are retiring. This firing, as laughable as it may appear, has however a great influence upon the retiring ſoldiers, ſince they conclude from it, how dangerous and toilſome the following day will be. Colonel Morgan followed this method, when the Britiſh army was forced to retreat from Philadelphia through the Jerſeys. I had the piquet, on the day when the army, on this retreat, had encamped in the country of Altentown, and the cuſtom of the piquet making the advance and rear guards having been introduced in the yager corps by Colonel Wurmb, I was ſilently recalling the piquets from their poſts to form the rear-guard, when the American rifle-

men,

Digitized by Google

men, who, during the whole night had been ſwarming round the camp, fired in the midſt of our watch-fire. At day-break, when they could ſee us, they hung upon us and accompanied our march to the new camp. Colonel Wurmb was obliged to ſupport me ſeveral times with his corps and the light infantry. The piquets conſiſted of about 200 men, and notwithſtanding we always marched through woody countries, I loſt only about 60. The American Colonel Butler once followed this rule with ſucceſs; it was, when Sir William Howe, in the beginning of the campaign of 1777, retreated from New-Brunſwick to Ambay, with an intention to decoy General Waſhington out of his ſtrong poſition, near Moriſtown. This partiſan had placed himſelf ſo near to the Engliſh army, in the night time, that at the moment the rear-guard was going to follow the army, Wreed's yager company was ſo violently fallen upon, that had Captain Wreed loſt his preſence of mind, the whole would certainly have been deſtroyed. We had to march five leagues, with but little heavy artillery, and no baggage, and yet we did not arrive in the camp near Ambay until dark. The Americans hung ſo cloſe upon the rear-guard, that the Engliſh army were ſeveral times forced to face about. I was detached under General Leſlie to the Scotch Hill, in order to gain this paſs, which the

Digitized by Google

the army muſt inevitably have gone through. I found here alſo the riflemen before-hand, and though the ground gave us much advantage, yet we loſt many men on this day, which proves, how neceſſary it is to have ſtrong corps of good riflemen in an army.

This is the time when riflemen are to be employed, having the advantage, that their rifles carry farther than muſkets, and can do more execution on the enemy at a diſtance, being themſelves out of his reach.

The riflemen ought to follow the enemy in ſmall parties of 20 or 30 men at the diſtance of five or ſix hundred paces. Theſe parties muſt again divide, by two's or three's, and endeavour, if the country permit, to come between the enemy's flanks and the columns. Their fire muſt not be directed upon the flankers, but between them, upon the corps. For, if by its elevated direction, the ſhot ſhould not effectually kill, yet it will diſable many for ſome time; and the ſight of a great number of wounded will depreſs the enemy as much as a ſmall number of killed, and a good markſman, at the diſtance of ſix or ſeven hundred paces, never ought to miſs a diviſion of cavalry or infantry.

In this manner, if the yagers be ſupported by cavalry and infantry, and the country be ſo interſected with mountains and woods, they muſt endeavour

Digitized by Google

endeavour to make the enemy pay dear at every ſtep; and when they are conducted by officers who take a pleaſure in, and ſtudy this part of war, the enemy will hardly be able to retire more than a few leagues in a day.

Should the retreat of the enemy be wilful, and he takes every precaution to form his rear-guard of infantry with artillery, yagers, dragoons, and huſſars, together, in order that one arm may ſupport the other, and each profit by every advantage which the ground may ſucceſſively offer; if he never neglect to cover his flanks, occupy, before-hand, thoſe defilés which he muſt paſs, and thereby cover his rear, he may then indeed keep off his purſuers; but not, however, without ſome loſs, if thoſe who are purſuing are daring and reſolute, and underſtand their duty, more eſpecially if the country be ſo interſected, that the retreating party be forced to take the high road.

In the beginning of the year 1777, when Lord Cornwallis quartered in and about New-Brunſwick, in order to ſupply the want of meat and forage, he was frequently forced to make inroads into the enemy's quarters; we had always indeed the good fortune to obtain our end, but had hardly retired a few paces, than the Americans were ſure to appear, and accompany us ſo warmly to our quarters, that we paid dear enough

Digitized by Google

each time for our little beef and forage, though we retreated in the beſt order.

If you know the country, you may eaſily gain the ſtart, to alarm the middle of one of the enemy's columns, on his retreat. In the retreat of the Engliſh army from Montmouth-Court-houſe in New-Jerſey, which march lay through very ſtrong thickets, General Lee was to take, with an American corps, to the right of the flank of the Engliſh army, whilſt General Waſhington was to attack the rear-guard of General Clinton, when paſſing a defilé, of which both ſides were covered with ſwampy thickets; but the attack of General Lee being very ſlow, the well-projected plan of General Waſhington was wholly fruſtrated, and his advance-guard not being ſupported by the attack of General Lee, was defeated.

I muſt not forget mentioning the retreat of the Pruſſian army, under the Prince of Pruſſia, from Bömiſh Lippa to Zittau, and the march of the King to the ſiege of Olmütz, through Bohemia, in both of which I am ſurprized at the inactivity of the Auſtrians, who, having ſo great a number of their beſt light troops in their army, ſhould have ſuffered the Pruſſians to march through a country ſo interſected, and in ſo ſhort a time, with the ſmall loſs that they ſuſtained. Though the meaſures of that great king, and of his

Digitized by Google

his ſkilful and active generals, might have been ever ſo excellent, and well obeyed, yet had the Auſtrian Huſſars and Croats been more active, the Pruſſians would have ſuffered more than they really did; for the countries through which the Pruſſians had to paſs, were ſo interſected with woods and defilés, that every ſtep ſhould have coſt ſome lives.

It is alſo aſtoniſhing, that Sir William Howe ſuffered the Americans, after the battle of Brandywine River, to retreat ſo eaſily, and gain the Chulkil. The Anſpach and Heſſian yagers, ſupported by both battalions of the Engliſh light infantry, and both regiments of light dragoons, had been ſufficient to ruin in ſuch a manner the American army, who fled in the greateſt haſte, that it could not have appeared again during the whole campaign. But inſtead of profiting by this favourable moment, the Britiſh Commander contented himſelf with the honour of having routed the enemy, and reſted three days on the field of battle, during which time the Americans gained the Chulkil.

If you perceive any diſorder in the retreat of the enemy, that one arm be not properly ſupported by another, or that a part of the rear be too far diſtant from the other, or you find that he has neglected to cover his flanks; in any of theſe caſes, fall upon him without delay. En-

Digitized by Google

deavour to gain the heights and thickeſt woods in ſuch mountainous countries with your yagers, who muſt inceſſantly accompany the enemy, and keep up a well-aimed fire, which will harraſs him, coſt him many men, and retard his march. I have very often ſeen, during the American war, a handful of riflemen hinder our march, embarraſs us, and have alſo remarked, how difficult it was to injure theſe men who individually annoyed our columns, and advance and rear-guards; I have ſeen few of theſe men killed, and we, on the contrary, always loſt many; and ſuppoſing they were even driven back, they however appeared again in a ſhort time. If theſe riflemen had been better diſciplined, and conducted by officers as perfectly acquainted with the particular management of this kind of warfare, as they already were with the country and inhabitants, I am firmly of opinion, that the Engliſh would have been forced to have given up the war in the ſecond year, and Waſhington would not have been obliged to have fought a ſingle battle.

But in purſuing the enemy, care muſt be taken not to fall into one of his ſnares. For example, after the battle of Wilhelmſthal, when the allied and French armies were ſeparated by the Fulde, Baron Wintzingeroda remained at New-Morſchen, with the Heſſian yagers, in order

Digitized by Google

order to obſerve the enemy's corps, which was at Old-Morſchen. It was ſuppoſed that the French would retire in a ſhort time, for which reaſon Wintzingeroda was upon his guard, to prevent the enemy from retiring unperceived. The day before the French intended to leave their camp, they let their camp and watch-fires go out in the night, broke up their tents, and concealed themſelves behind the heights of Old-Morſchen. Baron Wintzingeroda, who perceived the alterations in the enemy's camp the ſame night, croſſed the Fulda at day-break, in order to follow the enemy, but he had hardly approached near to the enemy's camp, than he received ſuch a heavy artillery fire, that thoſe of his corps were happy who could regain the right bank of the Fulda. Fortunately for the Heſſian yagers, the French artillery began to open too ſoon, for the advance guard of Wintzingeroda was ſcarcely in the abandoned camp of Turpin's huſſars, than they began to fire. If the French had ſuffered the yagers to advance nearer, and had fallen upon them with the cavalry, which was concealed on the flank of their battery, the moment they had fired, the greater part of the yagers would certainly never have reached the Fulda.

When Waſhington found that Sir William Howe intended to retire from Ambay to Staaten

Digitized by Google

Iſland, he placed Lord Sterling with a corps of light troops nearly in front of the Britiſh camp, in order to fall upon the rear guard, before their paſſage; Lord Sterling, who ſuppoſed that the Engliſh army had already croſſed Prince's Bay, and the rear guard only were near Ambay, fell upon the yager corps in the afternoon with great courage, but as his opponent was prepared for the reception, he was forced to retreat, after a conſiderable loſs of killed and priſoners.

If a partiſan think that a battle muſt take place in a ſhort time, he ſhould requeſt permiſſion from his commanding general to make an attempt upon the flanks or rear of the enemy. His march muſt be as ſecret as poſſible, and he ſhould place himſelf in ſuch a manner on the ſides of the enemy, that if he be routed, one of the paſſes which the enemy muſt take will be in his hands. By ſuch an opportunity a part of the baggage may be ſeized, and the trouble well paid.

If the retreat of the enemy happen in open countries, purſue him with cavalry, and ſupport theſe with infantry; for ſhould he fall upon the cavalry, they can retire upon the infantry. It is beſt, if the ground permit, for the cavalry to march in two lines, having intervals of the ſame ſpace which each troop occupies. The ſecond line follows at the diſtance of 300 paces, each troop

Digitized by Google

troop of this line placed oppoſite to the intervals of the firſt line, in order to ſupport it. The flank troops of the ſecond line muſt however outwing thoſe of the firſt by their whole front, and in caſe the enemy ſhould hazard an attack, or you overtake him, theſe muſt endeavour to turn his flanks. The troops of the firſt line have their flankers in front, who follow the enemy, continually firing their piſtols or carbines; mounted riflemen may alſo be employed to annoy and create confuſion in the enemy's ſquadrons, by a well-directed fire. A few yagers may alſo be mixed with them, to do more execution. Should the enemy's cavalry rout yours, the yagers muſt endeavour to ſave themſelves through the intervals, and ſhould they even find themſelves in the midſt of the enemy's cavalry, they muſt throw themſelves flat upon the ground, and remain there until the enemy's cavalry retire again, who will not certainly make a long ſtay, nor run the riſk of ſo much danger, merely for the ſake of cutting down a few yagers. The latter ſpring up the moment they find the enemy retire, and follow him with a well-aimed fire. If yagers were trained and accuſtomed to this method of fighting, few would ever be loſt. In general, though the enemy may retreat in the greateſt order, yet not a day can paſs that he will not loſe ſome men, if thoſe who purſue him be ſkil-

Digitized by Google

ful, cool, and collected. In the American war, I have obſerved that this manœuvre was always executed with great indexterity by the Engliſh; it appeared, as if they were not acquainted with it, and were always glad to ſee the enemy retire. The day when Fort Lee was taken by the Engliſh, I requeſted permiſſion from a certain general now living, to hang upon the American column, who were retiring before our eyes, from Fort Lee to Hackenſack, and gave us an opportunity of attacking the right flank of their march: but I was refuſed, though the nature of the ground was ſuch, that 100 yagers could have ruined that column. At New Brunſwick, when General Waſhington croſſed the Rariton, and at Trainton, when he croſſed the Delaware; at Rhode Iſland, when General Sulivan made his retreat to New England, and at German Town, we always built a golden bridge for our enemy. This is indeed acting in a chriſtian-like manner, but it is not doing juſtice to our king and country, for the principal duty of a general is to put an end to the war as ſoon as poſſible.

SEC-

Digitized by Google

SECTION VII.

Of Ambuſcades.

THOUGH the rules laid down for ſurpriſals, are ſimilar to thoſe for ambuſcades, yet it will be uſeful to give general rules, in order to direct the conduct of the partiſan. They are as follow:

1. Regulate your ambuſcade according to the ſtrength of the enemy, and the nature of the ground. If the country be even, employ cavalry, or both arms at the ſame time; on the contrary, in countries much interſected, light infantry muſt be employed to the utmoſt of their ability.

2. Uſe well diſciplined troops, who are not inclined to deſertion, and who can be depended upon for the greateſt ſilence.

3. The troops muſt be conducted into the ambuſcade in ſuch a manner, that their footſteps cannot be traced, viz. be marched to the ſpot from the ſide, oppoſite to which you intend to fall upon the enemy.

4. Ambuſcades muſt not be laid too ſoon; men who are forced to remain motionleſs will ſuffer doubly, from the exceſſive heat of the weather, and if it be in a ſevere winter, their limbs become

Digitized by Google

come benumbed: in this ſtate they will be unable to move on the approach of the enemy, and their ſpirits be depreſſed proportionably to the ſtiffneſs of their joints.

5. Ambuſcades muſt be laid double, treble, and fourfold, in order to fall upon the enemy on different ſides, by which he will have no time to collect himſelf, or retreat in order.

6. A reſerve muſt be kept to ſend aſſiſtance to that place, where the enemy may defend himſelf moſt reſolutely.

7. The men muſt be ſo placed, that they be ready for action. If they lay down upon the ground, it muſt be done in the ſame order and diſpoſition as when they ſtood up.

8. The men muſt have bread and water with them, and the cavalry muſt have one feed at leaſt.

9. The officers and non-commiſſioned officers commanding diviſions, muſt have their attention fixed upon their men, as well upon the march as during the ambuſcade, that no ſoldier may go off; and all the ſervants, as they are generally inclined to maraud, muſt be conducted and watched by an officer, and ſome truſty non-commiſſioned officers.

10. Horſes that neigh, dogs accuſtomed to bark, or men who cough or have colds, muſt not be employed in ambuſcades.

11. Thoſe

Digitized by Google

11. Thoſe ſoldiers whoſe fidelity you are fully aſſured of, muſt be uſed for ſentries. Theſe may be placed in trees, or they may lay themſelves flat on the ground, and by a ſignal previouſly agreed upon, announce the approach of the enemy. For example, give the ſentries white handkerchiefs, to make the concerted ſignal, by ſhewing them from behind their backs, but this muſt be done very near the ground; the commander of the ambuſcade muſt chooſe a place for his poſt from whence he can immediately diſcover this ſignal. It is beſt to ſend officers or truſty non-commiſſioned officers as ſentinels.

12. All the inhabitants, &c. who paſs the ambuſcade within a certain diſtance, and whom you ſuppoſe may have diſcovered it, muſt be ſeized.

13. The enemy muſt not be wholly ſurrounded, more eſpecially if you are inferior to him in ſtrength, for it might excite him to a deſperate reſiſtance.

There are few countries in the world, which do not afford places for ambuſcades. In even countries, corn fields, villages, and farms, may be occupied. The moſt open countries have frequently favoured the ſucceſs of ambuſcades, being the leaſt expected in ſuch places. In interſected countries, there are woods, thickets, valleys, ravines, hollow ways, uneven grounds,

Digitized by Google

grounds, and ditches, in and behind which a number of men can be eaſily concealed.

The principal reaſons for laying ambuſcades are as follow:

1. To attack, carry off, or deſtroy an enemy's convoy, the march of which has been aſcertained, and which you may not conceive yourſelf ſufficiently ſtrong to attack openly.

2. To draw an enemy's detachment that has often annoyed you into a ſnare, and to deſtroy him.

3. To hinder the enemy in foraging.

4. To ſeize couriers with important diſpatches, or otherwiſe, principal perſons of the enemy's army.

5. During retreats, to get rid of a cloſe purſuit.

In the firſt caſe, three or four different ambuſcades muſt be laid, one of which will ſerve as a reſerve, by which the part that meets the greateſt reſiſtance may be ſupported. Three ambuſcades muſt be ſo laid, that the head, the center, and the rear of the enemy can be attacked at the ſame moment with vigour. In the attack, detach ſmall parties of cavalry to the intervals, in order to amuſe thoſe of the enemy who march along the convoy, and who might collect and ſupport thoſe parts of the convoy which might be attacked, obſerving that your parties of cavalry

Digitized by Google

valry do not engage in ſerious action, but only ſkirmiſh with the enemy. Thoſe however who are in the real attack, muſt not loſe their time by firing, but after the firſt volley charge the enemy with fixed bayonets, at the ſame time giving a loud ſhout, in order to ſpread confuſion throughout the whole.

If you have certain intelligence, when and where the enemy intend to forage, lay in that country different ambuſcades of cavalry, ſupported by infantry, who, ſhould the enemy neglect the neceſſary precaution, muſt ruſh at once upon the eſcort of the foragers, drive them back, and endeavour to penetrate even amidſt the foragers. You muſt endeavour to kill as many men and horſes as poſſible, take with you what you can, and retreat as quick as you advanced. As with troops not well diſciplined, the ſervants, as well as the ſoldiers of the eſcort, endeavour by this opportunity to go marauding, it will be very eaſy to take a number of men and horſes: ſuch marauders, who often commit the moſt ſhocking barbarities in the villages, at which humanity ſhudders, muſt be cut down, or at leaſt ſeverely beaten, reproaching them with their crimes, in the preſence of the inhabitants, by which you recommend yourſelf, whether it be in an enemy's country or otherwiſe, and gain the attachment of the whole country. I cannot con-

Digitized by Google

conceive, why the Duke of Lauzun, who ſtood with his legion five leagues from Glouceſter, before the allied army undertook the ſiege of York, ſuffered the corps near Glouceſter to forage quietly, even until the laſt day. I hardly know any country more adapted for ambuſcades, than that from Saul's Plantation to Glouceſter Court-houſe. All the Plantations, which were foraged in this country, are ſurrounded with thickets, having much underwood, and intelligence of our foraging could not be unknown to the enemy, as every inhabitant of the country was diſaffected towards us, and it was always known in camp the evening before, whether the following day ſhould be for foraging.

If you have a knowledge of the character of your enemy's commander, that he be paſſionate, and yet but a novice in warfare; it may be concluded, that he will be eager to diſtinguiſh himſelf. In this caſe, it will ſeldom fail, if you lay an ambuſcade, during the night-time, in the neighbourhood of the enemy's out-poſts, and ſend at day-break a ſmall party to annoy them, and the patroles, which as ſoon as attacked, muſt retreat by the ambuſcade; at which time the concealed men muſt then ruſh out and cut off the purſuers. But you muſt, in ſuch caſe, avoid committing the fault, which a certain Lieutenant-Colonel did near Glouceſter.

It

Digitized by Google

It was in the laſt foraging that was undertaken before the ſiege of York, I had the advance guard, with 100 cavalry, and as many yagers and rangers; I was to ſet out two hours before day-light, and as ſoon as I had left Saul's Plantation behind, to extend a chain in order to cover the foraging, during which, in caſe of an enemy's attack the above mentioned lieutenant-colonel was to ſupport me with 200 cavalry; for Lord Cornwallis had received certain intelligence that the allied army would advance to the ſiege on the following day; I had ſcarcely taken the neceſſary meaſures, than a ſmall number of French huſſars and mounted Virginian volunteers appeared, with whom I ſkirmiſhed. The foraging ended fortunately, and Colonel Dundas, who commanded the whole, ordered me to retire, adding, that he had left this lieutenant-colonel with 200 cavalry upon the left of the road as an ambuſcade in a thicket, in order to ſurpriſe, from thence, the enemy's party, that would certainly purſue me, leaving to me the taſk of decoying them. I collected my poſts, and made the rear with thirty cavalry. The enemy purſued me; I paſſed by the ambuſcade, and the enemy continued hanging upon me; but inſtead of the commander of the ambuſcade having patience a few minutes longer, he ſallied out, when only ſome of the enemy's flankers had paſſed, by which the plan

Digitized by Google

plan turned out ſo unfavourable, that only two volunteers were taken priſoners.

As good and brave ſoldiers as the Britiſh are, yet they are not calculated for the *petite guerre*, for they have not the patience, which is ſo highly neceſſary to this tedious and toilſome part of war. In the ſame campaign, another fault of this kind fruſtrated a plan in which I had nearly ſucceeded. It was in the country of Great-bridge, where General Arnold had entrenched a poſt which covered the paſs from Portſmouth towards North Carolina; the general had received intelligence, that the enemy intended to carry this poſt: To prevent which, a detachment of 500 men was ſent there in order to ſtrengthen it. The detachment had hardly arrived, when information was received, that the enemy was on his march with 1500 men, had artillery, and were provided with faſcines and ladders. Having been ſome time before in this country with Colonel Simcoe, beyond Camp's Landing, I remarked, that only one road led out of North Carolina on that ſide to this poſt, which had been made about a ſmall league diſtant by help of a dyke, through an impenetrable moraſs, and which ran zig-zag for 800 or 1000 paces; this road onwards from the dyke, as far as within a quarter of a league from Greatbridge, was bordered on both ſides with thickets; in conſequence,

Digitized by Google

quence, I requeſted permiſſion from the commander of the detachment, to lay myſelf in ambuſcade in the thicket which was along the road before day-break. I obtained leave, and took a reinforcement of as many Britiſh, as made up 250 men with my yagers; I arrived two hours before day-light near the dyke, divided my detachment in four equal parts, laid two ambuſcades on each ſide of the road, that on the left nearly upon the dyke, and that upon the right 100 paces farther up, in order that the firing of the one diviſion might not injure the other. 4 or 500 paces farther from the dyke I laid in the ſame manner, two other ambuſcades, and placed the greater part of my riflemen in the ambuſcade neareſt the dyke, in order to create more confuſion among the enemy by a deſtructive fire; I ſtationed a double poſt of infantry at the diſtance of a muſket-ſhot from the dyke, where I remained myſelf to command the firſt firing, which was to be as a ſignal for the ambuſcades to fall upon the enemy after the firſt volley, and at the ſame time to give a loud ſhout; for my intention was, to ſuffer 5 or 600 men to paſs the dyke, all of whom would certainly have been loſt; for thoſe who were behind them, on account of the length and narrowneſs of the dyke, could have afforded no aſſiſtance, and

Digitized by Google

would certainly have taken flight to avoid the ſnare into which their comrades had fallen.

I had given orders for all ſmall patroles of the enemy to paſs unmoleſted. About ten o'clock in the forenoon, a patrole of four riflemen appeared, who perceiving the ſentries, returned over the dyke.

The enemy not appearing in the afternoon, the commander of the detachment was impatient, and called me off. I requeſted permiſſiou to remain until evening, but he ordered me a ſecond time to leave the place, that the whole was a falſe alarm, and that he intended to patrole towards the enemy. I had hardly drawn up my ambuſcade, and my commander juſt arrived with the remaining part of the detachment, than a detachment of the enemy appeared, but which, after perceiving the red coats, retreated precipitately over the dyke; a part of the cavalry purſued, and took an officer of the dragoons, whoſe horſe had fallen down with him. I experienced only diſappointment as a recompence for my trouble, and we marched back again the ſame evening.

If you be often annoyed, eſpecially in winter quarters, it is eaſy, by well laid ambuſcades, to tire out the enemy. This muſt not however be done immediately upon his having alarmed you once or twice, but let him become daring, which will cer-

certainly

Digitized by Google

tainly be the caſe, if you permit different parties to go here and there unmoleſted. For example: during the winter in the beginning of 1777, when the corps under Lord Cornwallis were quartered in and round New Brunſwick, the cordon, more eſpecially that of the yager poſts, was daily alarmed by the Americans, who, elated by the affair of Trainton, had become very daring. The cordon of theſe quarters formed a circle, of which Brunſwick was the centre, and the river Rariton the diameter, which (in the vicinity of my poſt at Landing), was not more than 100 paces wide. The left wing of my poſt extended to the left bank of this river, where it had a ford, which I kept occupied in the day-time by a double poſt, but from which I retired in the night, as it lay too far out of my chain towards the enemy. On the oppoſite ſide of the river to this poſt was a parſonage-houſe, having a barn behind it, by which the high road led from Rocky Hill to Brunſwick. The Americans had diſcovered by ſpies, that before I occupied this poſt in the morning, I ſearched this country as far as the river, where there were different ravines, in which the enemy might have concealed himſelf in the night-time: a number of riflemen, as the ſpring was then approaching, had ſeveral nights ſneaked along one after the other into the above-mentioned barn, from whence they fired,

Digitized by Google

as ſoon as the patroles approached the river, by which one yager was ſeverely wounded. As I was not inclined (out of humanity to the prieſt, though he was no loyaliſt), to burn down the barn; and as I wiſhed to get rid of theſe viſitors, who would probably have killed many more brave yagers, (who made up the ſtrength of both the firſt companies, which Captain Wreden and I had brought to America, and who were already reduced from 250 to about 120), I had recourſe to an ambuſcade, which fully anſwered our purpoſe. Each company was provided with a light two-pounder.

The night before I laid the ambuſcade, I took the cannoneer, ſhewed him the place where the field piece ſhould be conducted, I made him three ſignals by white rods, of three different ſhots which he was to fire one after the other, as ſoon as he ſhould hear a ſhot from the barn. On the road where the field piece was to be placed, was a thin hedge, which I ordered to be made ſo thick in the night-time, that the field piece could not be ſeen through it. Before day-break, I ordered it to be drawn to the intended place, under an eſcort, and I placed Lieutenant Trautetter (who, in bravery had ſcarcely his equal, and who was a great loſs to the corps, being afterwards killed at Brandy Wine River), with 30 yagers, on the bank of the river beyond the barn,

Digitized by Google

barn, with directions to keep his eye upon the door of it; and as the left bank of the river was here bordered with meadows, the yagers were to lie flat upon the ground, and not ſhew themſelves before the Americans ſhould be diſlodged from the barn by the artillery. At day-break I made a patrole, and as ſoon as I approached the river, a few ſhots were fired from the barn. The artillery-man began to fire, and on the third ſhot the enemy's detachment ruſhed out. As ſoon as the yagers in the ambuſcade perceived it, they roſe up, and directed their fire ſo well, that the greater part of the enemy's party was either killed or wounded; and from that time we remained unmoleſted.

One may alſo decoy an enemy into an ambuſcade, by driving herds of cattle or a number of waggons, in the neighbourhood of the enemy's poſt, and laying an ambuſcade at ſome diſtance, which ruſhes out immediately, when the enemy believes himſelf maſter of the booty. The farther you are from the enemy, the more eaſily ſuch plan will ſucceed; but thoſe who drive the cattle, or conduct the waggons, muſt be reſolute ſoldiers, dreſſed like country people; for ſervants or peaſantry would not hazard themſelves ſo near the enemy, or would perhaps run away too ſoon.

Much as ambuſcades frighten the enemy, and give the ſoldiers a reliſh for the *petite guerre*

Digitized by Google

when ſucceſsful, yet the more care muſt be taken that they be not laid too often, and fall out contrary to your wiſh, in which caſe the confidence of the ſoldiers will be eaſily alienated from their commander. The principal rule is, to know your enemy and the country. But ſhould an ambuſcade be laid in vain, retire from it with the greateſt ſilence without being diſcovered by any one, and not follow the example of that man,, whom Colonel Wurmb placed in ambuſcade in the campaign of 1779, in the church-yard near Philips Bridge, and ordered, if the enemy did not appear, to return ſilently at day break. The enemy did not appear, and the dextrous partiſan called back his ſentries with the bugle. It appears ſcarcely probable, but I heard it with my own ears.

SECTION VIII.

Of Retreats.

EVERY retrogade march, whether wilful or forced, is a retreat. The firſt is not ſubject to ſo great difficulties, ſince you have time to conſider before-hand what meaſures to take afterwards; but in the latter, it is quite otherwiſe; the enemy in general gives you no time, he hangs upon you before you can collect yourſelf; he is generally ſuperior in force; his ſoldiers, who have gained ſome

Digitized by Google

ſome advantage, believe themſelves better and ſtronger, and are more daring than yours, who by being continually annoyed, become weary and diſſatisfied.

I will now conſider retreats which are made before a purſuing enemy of a ſuperior force. Here the commander of a corps or detachment may ſhew his talents, his ſkill and knowledge in the art of war, and his courage. The hero ſhews himſelf in his real greatneſs; and ancient as well as modern hiſtory, never beſtow greater eulogiums upon generals, than in their deſcriptions of brilliant retreats.

The ſucceſs of a retreat depends entirely upon a knowledge of the country, underſtanding how to employ and place your troops, that one may defend and ſupport the other; and in knowing how to take an immediate reſolution in every occurrence and alteration, in order to reſiſt the impetuoſity of the enemy.

The ſituation of the country may render one retreat more toilſome than another: in an open country the motions of the enemy may be ſeen at a diſtance, and his intentions often fruſtrated. But in a mountainous country, or one interſected with woods, it is far more difficult, ſince every ſtratagem and manœuvre may be employed; and I again repeat, that it is abſolutely neceſſary to endeavour to acquire the moſt perfect

Digitized by Google

knowledge of the country in which war is carried on, ſo that at every ſtep backwards, you may always know before-hand where cavalry, infantry, or artillery, ſhould be employed ſeparately, and where they can be uſed together.

The courſe of rivers ſhould be known; you muſt be acquainted with the bridges, fords, and defilées in your rear. You ought to conſider before-hand where ambuſcades can be laid, by which you can retard the enemy, but ought to be certain of your advantage before you undertake them, ſo as not to engage without neceſſity. You muſt know more than one road, and make uſe of your ingenuity to alter, or form plans, according to circumſtances.

If the retreat happen in an open country, your welfare depends upon the accuracy of your diſpoſitions. In this caſe, place your corps in a line, the light infantry in the centre, leaving intervals between each company for platoons of riflemen, and place the cavalry in eight diviſions, on both flanks of the infantry. As ſoon as the ſignal for the retreat be given, all even diviſions muſt retire to a certain diſtance, and halt and front; the odd diviſions who during this oppoſed the enemy, and covered their retreat, having their ſkirmiſhers two or three hundred paces in front, and on both flanks, and the riflemen muſt now be in extended order; this line retires, as

ſoon

Digitized by Google

ſoon as the other has formed, under cover of the fire of their flankers, marches through the intervals of the ſtanding line, and forms up in the ſame manner as the firſt at a certain diſtance. In this manner one line retreats through the other, until the enemy has given up the purſuit. But the flankers of the cavalry and riflemen of that part which ſtands formed up, muſt, when the advancing line is only one hundred paces from it, fall out, to ſupport and relieve thoſe who are ſkirmiſhing. The retreating line calling in again their flankers and riflemen, when they have paſſed one hundred paces through the intervals of thoſe that are formed up. If the flankers be preſſed too hard by the enemy, they muſt retreat towards the diviſions that have remained formed, and the ſtanding line moves up in order to gain the intervals.

In this caſe the riflemen muſt loſe no time, but form up in the intervals purpoſely left for them. The two troops on the wings retire to the diſtance of one or two hundred paces, in order to cover both flanks, and to fall upon thoſe of the enemy's cavalry on his attack; theſe troops muſt not, however, place themſelves behind the line, but ſo as to outwing the line, by their whole front. In this poſture you may, if you are forced to fight, wait the enemy's approach; but it is better to go and meet him, if he be not far diſtant;

Digitized by Google

diſtant; for a reſolute movement forward gives courage to your ſoldiers and embarraſſes the enemy, by its being unexpected. Should ſome parties of the enemy purſue ſo far from their main body, that they cannot be immediately ſupported, you muſt take advantage of this favourable moment, and fall upon them. But, as ſoon as you have chaſtiſed their imprudence, make your retreat in the former order.

If you find on your march, buſhes, ponds, or ravines, or be proceeding near the banks of rivers, draw towards them for *appui*, and make your diſpoſition accordingly. For inſtance, cloſe your infantry to a pond, ravine, or river, covering the other flank with cavalry, but a buſh or a ſmall thicket muſt be occupied by your infantry, or only your riflemen, and the cavalry ſhould be placed near. Upon the whole, take every advantage of the ground.

Should you be purſued by a ſuperior number of cavalry, the infantry muſt retire by column of ſub-diviſions, and your cavalry be placed in two lines *en echequier* on both wings, covered by the fire of the infantry who can form up and front, on all ſides, by this diſpoſition. Suppoſing the corps or detachment, which is forced to retreat, before a ſuperior number of cavalry, to conſiſt of 2000 infantry and 1000 cavalry, I would divide the infantry into two columns, and my cavalry

Digitized by Google

cavalry into two diviſions, one of which ſhould be placed between the head, and the other between the rear of both columns. In this diſpoſition there will be no difficulty in moving; you can front on all ſides with rapidity, the cavalry is covered by the fire of the infantry, they can act with ſecurity when a favourable opportunity offers, and can find ſupport every moment; the infantry in ſuch ſituation, will be attacked by cavalry with difficulty; I think that this diſpoſition would be the moſt favourable, if you ſhould be forced to retreat before a ſwarm of Tartars or Coſſacks. Should you have artillery in ſuch a caſe, it muſt be drawn on the flanks of the head and rear of both columns.

If you find that you cannot withſtand a ſuperior force of cavalry, order yours to ſave themſelves by flight, and having formed the ſquare, retreat with your infantry; for it is better to loſe a part than the whole, a party of infantry being ſooner replaced than good cavalry. For example, after the winter expedition in 1760, when the allied army left the Wetterau, gave up the ſieges of Caſſel and Ziegenheyn, and returned into Weſtphalia, General Luckner, with his huſſar regiment and the Schlotheim grenadier battalion, which conſiſted of 4 grenadier companies of the Heſſian guards, was fallen upon on his retreat by more than 30 ſquadrons of French cavalry. This celebrated,

Digitized by Google

celebrated, ſkilful, and great partiſan immediately perceived, that at laſt it muſt be his fate to be either taken priſoner or cut to pieces. He therefore reſolved to ſave himſelf and his huſſars. Colonel Schlotheim, who could not follow with his grenadiers, formed the ſquare, and retreated in the beſt order from Kalbſburg, over the Plain, to Fritzlar, without loſs. As he was one of thoſe rare men, who do not ſound their own heroic deeds in every ear, but who content themſelves with a conſciouſneſs of their own worth, a certain perſon, known at head quarters by his bon-mots, attributed the whole merit of this admirable retreat to himſelf. He received the compliment for it, and, if I am not miſtaken, a preſent; but to his ſhame, the truth was diſcovered. I think that ſuch a man deſerves the puniſhment due to a common thief; for what robber can be more infamous than he, who ſteals that honour and reputation which another has dearly purchaſed at the riſque of his liberty and his life.

As I have adviſed infantry to form the ſquare in retreating before a ſuperior force of cavalry, and have given this example of Colonel Schlotheim, it may be objected that this is no proof of the effect of ſuch diſpoſition of infantry againſt cavalry, the French cavalry not having croſſed their ſabres with the bayonets of theſe grenadiers,

Digitized by Google

grenadiers, and that perhaps any other cavalry could have cruſhed this battalion. Though I have ſerved in the infantry from my youth, I muſt grant, that if the Duke of Broglio, who was preſent himſelf, had hazarded a ſquadron, theſe brave grenadiers would in the end have been ſacrificed; and I think moreover, that the beſt infantry, though the ſquare may preſerve ever ſo good an order, cannot ſtand the charge of good cavalry; for a ſkilful commander of cavalry will regulate his attack at a diſtance, in ſuch a manner that they will only be expoſed to the fire of one ſide of the ſquare.

This attack muſt be made by the cavalry in column, and if the firſt troop be even deſtroyed by the fire or the bayonets, yet the following will cut down all before them, and the horſes themſelves, when they have the bayonets in their breaſts, cannot be kept off by the infantry, for being ſo animated, they do not feel the pain of their wounds. I have experienced a proof of this myſelf. In the affair of Crutches Mill, in the campain of 1777, my horſe was wounded in the body, but my ſervant did not perceive it, until the evening after the action; and though it had received the ſhot early in the morning, it nevertheleſs carried me through the whole day.

I will now cite two examples in favour of cavalry: Firſt. In the campain of 1759, as the Auſtrians,

In 1813 Bork's cavalry broke three squares of Infantry on the Gravina. Vide Napier. Difference of opinion between Napier & Mitchell

Digitized by Google

Auſtrians, under General de Ville, wiſhed to drive off General Fouquet from his ſtrong poſt near Landſhut in Sileſia, the latter ſent Major Franclin to occupy the ſmall town of Freyburg with 200 men, in order to maintain the communication with Schweidnitz. On the approach of the Auſtrians, the major was forced to leave this poſt, having no orders to defend himſelf againſt a ſuperior force at the riſque of his laſt man. He endeavoured to retreat to Schweidnitz, and intended at firſt to march along the Pölſnitz, but as he was overtaken and ſurrounded on this march by the Auſtrian cavalry, he determined, with great preſence of mind, to attempt the laſt reſource, and formed the ſquare. He expected to paſs the Plain, and attain a thicket, called the Nonnenbuſh, but before he could reach it, he was ſeveral times attacked by the Auſtrian cavalry, whom however he repulſed and drove back each time, by a well-directed fire. The Auſtrian general, who was not far diſtant, hearing the fire of the ſmall arms, haſtened with more cavalry, and renewed the attack, whereby, in the end, this handful of brave Pruſſians, having fired away all their ammunition, and being wholly exhauſted, was forced to yield. The Auſtrian general, who eſteemed merit even in an enemy, ſtopped the fury of the cavalry, ſaved the lives of many of theſe brave men,

Digitized by Google

men, and honoured the Pruſſian Major, and all under his command, with the higheſt praiſe.

Secondly. In the ſame war, a Saxon battalion retreated, not far from Langenſalza, in the beſt order, before the Heſſian dragoon guards, under the then Colonel Heiſter. They directed their fire ſo well at every attack, that the dragoons were repulſed each time with great loſs. But as the Colonel, fully aſſured of the bravery of his dragoons, would not relinquiſh his deſign, he renewed the attack, and the whole Saxon battalion was in a few minutes cut to pieces.

As theſe two examples are illuſtrative of the advantage of cavalry, I muſt now mention one, which will prove the poſſibility of infantry, in the before-mentioned diſpoſition, being able to withſtand the beſt cavalry. It was when the Swedes, in the year 1758, entered the Pruſſian dominions, and General Wedel, after the Ruſſians had been routed, near Zorndorf, by the King of Pruſſia, haſtened there with his corps, in order to drive out the Swedes from Brandenburgian and Pruſſian Pomerania. The Pruſſian general received intelligence on his march, that a Swediſh detachment had advanced over Fehrbellin, in order to forage. The general, on this information, took Moring's huſſars, and Pletting's dragoons, and found the reſerve of the Swedes near Terrau, which conſiſted of 100 cavalry and 200 infantry;

Digitized by Google

approaching cavalry: if the cavalry charge, they muſt give the firſt volley at 100 paces diſtant, which will coſt men and horſes; the firſt rank muſt not fire until it be able to make the enemy feel wadding, ball, and bayonet at once: but it may be poſſible, that after the riflemen have coolly fired, the courage of the enemy will be abated: perhaps it may be alſo poſſible, that the cavalry are ſhy at the fire of the riflemen, and will give up ſo dear an attack. I have often been ſent in the American war with only yagers againſt the enemy, but was always aſſured, that if the cavalry braved the fire, it would ſeldom happen, that their attack was repulſed by the bayonets; I therefore always marched on with confidence, and ſhould have been ſtill more confident with a ſquare of yagers againſt cavalry, than with one of infantry armed with bayonets, which in the preſent day the ſoldier carries more for a load and ornament than for defence, and which, from the ſtraightneſs of the ſtocks, are very unhandy for firing and charging.

In mountainous countries, the cavalry ought to march before, and the light infantry bring up the rear. The riflemen ſhould endeavour to gain thoſe heights which cover the roads; they muſt be divided in ſmall parties, and ſearch the mountains on both ſides of the road, along which the whole intend to march; they muſt endeavour to keep

Digitized by Google

keep off the enemy from the flank, ſhould any of his patroles have approached unexpectedly by a narrow path.

If you be overtaken by the enemy in ſuch a circumſcribed country, and forced to make a ſtand, both parties are equal, and the moſt reſolute attack will decide the day, as the enemy, though ſuperior, cannot attack you with a larger front than your own. In this caſe, if the defilé fire can be employed, the light infantry will be able, under its protection, to attack the enemy or retire.

If you perceive that the fire does great execution, charge the enemy with the bayonet; but the moment you have driven him back, endeavour to renew your march in the beſt order.

If during your retreat in ſuch countries you be continually moleſted by the enemy, and you know that the country is more open a little farther, ſend a part of your troops into that country immediately, who muſt ſearch out a place for an ambuſcade there, into which you can decoy the enemy, if purſuing too eagerly. For inſtance, as the Pruſſian army under Prince Henry in the campaign of 1758, retreated towards Dreſden, and the detached corps at Gamich and Maxen were forced to abandon their poſts, the Pruſſians were continually moleſted and attacked on their march, in the country of

Digitized by Google

Keſſeldorf, by the Croats and huſſars of the Auſtrians. In order to decoy them into the open field, and get rid of them, the then Lieutenant Colonel Belling placed himſelf with his huſſars in ambuſcade in a village that ſtood on the road ſide, whilſt in the mean time the Croats, who thought their rear ſecure, advanced nearer and nearer to the plain. The free battalion of Wunſch and a ſquadron of Meinicke dragoons endeavoured to attack them in front, whereupon the Croats retreated towards the village, in order to ſecure their rear. Lieutenant Colonel Belling hereupon fell upon them out of his ambuſcade, killed or wounded more than 2000, and the Pruſſians renewed their march afterwards unmoleſted.

Should you have a river on your rear, and you are forced to paſs it by means of a bridge or a ford, make yourſelf maſter of it in time, becauſe the enemy will certainly endeavour to gain it, if he underſtand his duty. In this caſe, ſend a party of your cavalry there, who ſhould alight, in order to occupy the oppoſite bank on both ſides of the bridge or ford. If the paſs be a defilé, occupy the heights at the entrance and iſſue, in which the mounted riflemen ſhould be employed. Colonel Donop, who was at Montholly during the unfortunate affair at Trenton, ſent, the moment he had intelligence of it, Captain Lorey

Digitized by Google

Lorey with his few mounted yagers, in order to occupy the pass of Croswick, by which General Washington could have cut off the Donop corps from that under Lord Cornwallis, a part of which stood at Princetown.

An officer who is entrusted with such a post, must, as soon as he arrives there, patrole the country on the opposite side of the river or defilé, to be certain that no enemy is in the neighbourhood, or in case he find the enemy, that he may have time to take proper measures for the defence of his post, which ought to be maintained to the last man. In such an instance, you must not entrust an officer merely by the roster, but appoint one, whose skill, courage, and resolution you are assured of, which will also be the best means to establish emulation among the officers.

The roster according to seniority in a light corps in war time, where the unskilfulness or irresolution of an officer has so frequently occasioned the loss of the honour, liberty, and lives of so many men, has always appeared to me like the electing of a burgomaster in a free imperial city, where the municipality assembled round a table, and laid down their honourable heads and grey beards upon it; on the middle of the table was placed a louse, which louse on marching into the beard of one of them, decided the election of the dignity of burgomaster.

If

Digitized by Google

If you have a little the advance of the enemy, and you have paſſed a bridge, ford, or defilé in your retreat, you muſt, ſhould there be a village in the neighbourhood, take ſome harrows, and throw them into the ford, and ſtop up the bridge or defilé with trees or waggons, two wheels of the latter of which muſt be taken off. If time permit, and it be a wooden bridge, burn or deſtroy it. Should the enemy be too near to allow this, kill two or three horſes or cows upon the bridge, or in the middle of the defilé, by which means you may retard the enemy's cavalry for a ſhort time, ſince a horſe will ſeldom paſs by a dead animal, and the leaſt obſtacle gives you an opportunity to continue your advance.

If the enemy hang upon you, and you be forced to retreat in his ſight, through ſuch narrow paſs, the cavalry muſt defile firſt, half of whom muſt, as ſoon as they have paſſed it, diſmount, and occupy the bank on both ſides of the bridge, or the heights of the defilé, in order to cover the paſſage of the remainder by their fire; the riflemen ſhould follow and ſupport the fire of the cavalry. The light infantry, who form up on this ſide of the bridge, ſhould fire by files or platoons, to retard the enemy, and muſt ſucceſſively retire by files from both flanks, but the center diviſion in front of the bridge or defilé

Digitized by Google

defilé ſhould face about, and fire by files in retreating. The cavalry mount again, the moment the riflemen have ſpread out on both ſides of the paſs, and retire from the firing. If you cannot go round the paſs, preſerve this diſpoſition until night begins, for the enemy will find it difficult to attack ſuch a paſs by force, the gaining of which would coſt many men. But ſhould they attempt to take it by force, you muſt ſacrifice ſome in order to ſave the greater part. In this manner, in the campaign of 1760, General Luckner was forced to ſacrifice the grenadier company of the Trumbach corps, in order to ſave his huſſars and yagers; for he had the whole advance guard of the French army upon him at once in a defilé near Wildungen. The captain of this company, whoſe brave grenadiers were either killed or wounded, alſo ſaved by his courage and reſolution the whole Luckner corps. I am particularly ſorry, that I cannot remember the name of this brave man, for no heroic deed ſhould remain hidden from poſterity, as nothing excites men more to great actions, than the examples of thoſe diſtinguiſhed characters, which hiſtory records. How much is it to be wiſhed, that a collection of great military actions were ſelected from hiſtory, to ſerve as introductory inſtruction to youth in military colleges: ſuch might be made uſe of for tranſlations into foreign lan-

guages,

Digitized by Google

guages, and would certainly be no little ſtimulus to acts of heroiſm and magnanimity.

If you form the rear of an army or ſtrong corps, which is forced to retreat, or you cover with your corps either of the flanks, you muſt employ all your force, in order to be ſerviceable to the army during the retreat, for as you may always be eaſily ſupported, you may hazard more than when you are left alone with a ſmall corps, and have to think of your own ſafety. In every retrograde ſtep that you take, and in every paſs which you are forced to leave, lay all poſſible obſtacles in the way of the enemy, to retard his motions.

If the enemy be delayed in his march by bad and narrow roads, place yourſelf upon one of the enemy's flanks. For inſtance, General Maxwell placed himſelf in the Iron Mountains, near Crutches Mill, in Penſylvania, and having turned the right flank of Sir William Howe's march, this general was forced to attack and repulſe him, before he could proceed any farther, whereby General Waſhington gained a whole march from the Britiſh.

If your army be ſo cloſely preſſed by the enemy, that a part of the artillery and baggage may be loſt, or be ſo entangled among defilés, that it cannot eaſily proceed, you muſt rather ſacrifice all than flee. In ſuch a caſe, you muſt encou-

rage

Digitized by Google

rage your men, and repreſent to them that their good conduct will be obſerved by the whole army, and that this is the moment to gain immortal reputation. It is ſcarcely credible, what an effect a few energetic words will have upon the ſoldier, and animate him in theſe critical circumſtances, particularly if the commander appear cheerful and confident: recollect always the old ſaying, he who never runs, can never be purſued. For inſtance, in a foraging that was undertaken from New Brunſwick to Quibeltown, I made the rear after it was ended, with my yager company and a detachment of the Engliſh light infantry. The country was interſected with mountains and thickets; I therefore placed the light infantry in the centre, and the yagers upon both flanks: I had ſcarcely retreated a ſtep than the enemy appeared, and preſſed me on all ſides. General Leſlie rode up to me at the moment when a party of riflemen fell upon my right flank; the general himſelf thought, that if I were not ſupported, many men and waggons muſt be loſt. I reached a ſmall height at this moment, which lay in a thick wood: my plan was formed inſtantly, I ordered the bugle horn to ſound the attack, and ruſhed vigorouſly upon theſe deſperadoes, many fell by the bayonets of the light infantry, and the enemy renounced the purſuit. Lord Cornwallis teſtified his approbation in general

Digitized by Google

neral orders, and each yager received a preſent of a dollar.

Should a corps or detachment, notwithſtanding the beſt diſpoſition, be routed, and its retreat become a flight, my advice is, never to take the common method of rallying, and endeavour to collect the hindmoſt men for reſiſtance. There is no other reſource in this caſe, than that the commander endeavour to reach the firſt fugitives, and here begin to form his men, which will be eaſily done, as they ſee behind them many more for protection, and if you have only once formed ſome files, there will be no difficulty in perſuading all the following to fall in. But if you will purſue the common method, and cry out Halt! Stand! you will only collect a few files, who at laſt, ſeeing the others run away, will do the ſame on the approach of the enemy.

On concluding this ſmall work, I will once more remark, that a commander at the levy or formation of a light corps, and alſo when war allows him leiſure, ſhould endeavour to diſcipline his men, according to the before deſcribed occurrences in war; if he do this, there will be nothing new to his officers and men, he may perform with them whatever is great and noble, and even ſurmount apparent impoſſibilities.

FINIS.

Printed by C. Roworth, Bell Yard, Fleet Street, for T. Egerton, at the Military Library, Whitehall.

Λεῖν ἀριστεύειν καὶ ὑπείροχον ἔμμεναι ἄλλων

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

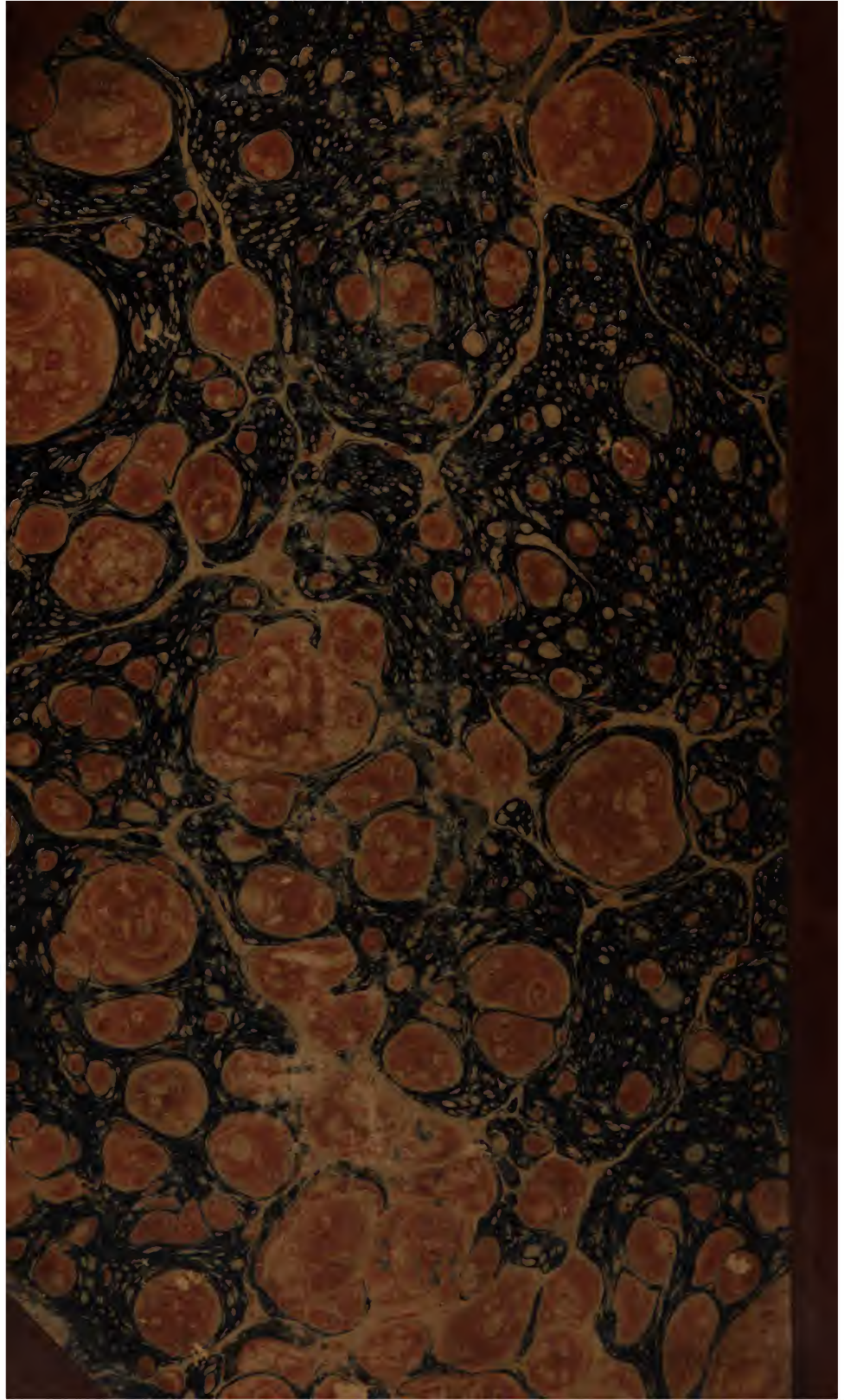
U 102 .E313 C.1
A treatise upon the duties of
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 039 081 828

U
102
.E313

DATE DUE

APR 16 1983

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA
94305

12/75
2050

Digitized by Google